SEMEMIC AND GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES IN GURUNG (NEPAL)

by

Warren William Glover

This thesis was submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy at the Australian National University.

December 1973
Except where otherwise acknowledged in the text, this thesis represents the original research of the author.

Warren W. Glover
SEMEMIC AND GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES IN GURUNG (NEPAL)

by

Warren W. Glover

ABSTRACT

Gurung is a Sino-Tibetan language spoken in central Nepal. This tagmemic description of Gurung sketches the way meaning (sememic structure) is expressed in surface forms (grammatical structures).

Chapter 1 outlines the geographical location and linguistic classification of Gurung, reviews previous descriptive work on the language, and sets out the theoretical position underlying the description. The orientation is tagmemic, positing separate sememic and grammatical hierarchies. Sememic structure is a representation of the semantic content of a communication, which is expressed through the forms, or grammatical structures, of a particular language.

Chapter 2 defines four levels of sememic structure in terms of the types of relation operative at each level: participant roles at role level, attribution at increment level, logical connection of propositions at statement level, and the interaction of stimulus and response at response level.

Chapters 3 to 8 describe grammatical structure at the clause, phrase, word, sentence, paragraph, and discourse levels, respectively, of the grammatical hierarchy in Gurung. The description of grammatical structures notes the sememic relations encoded by particular grammatical forms.

An appendix includes three Gurung texts analyzed to show grammatical structure at paragraph and discourse levels.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This description is based on six years' study of the Gurung language, four and a half of which were spent in Nepal. For the purposes of exemplification I have drawn primarily on a collection of letters and a body of texts tape-recorded and transcribed in Nepal, some of which were used for a computerized concordance of 46,000 morphemes (Glover and Glover 1970). The latter was produced under a joint project of the Oklahoma Research Institute and the Summer Institute of Linguistics, partially supported under contract OEC-0-9-097721-2778(014) with the Office of Education, US Department of Health, Education and Welfare. In places I have drawn on the intuitions my wife and I have formed about the language in speaking it in Nepal, but as we have not achieved native speaker competence in Gurung I have not felt able to use this as a major source of examples. The chief source of data has therefore been my closest friend and language assistant in Nepal, Mr. Deu Bahadur Gurung, a man in his late twenties. Many other Gurung people have also helped us learn their language - most of them are listed elsewhere (Glover 1970:131).

The writings of Mary Ruth Wise (1971), Joseph Grimes (1972b), and Robert Longacre (1972) have been the major stimuli in developing a somewhat eclectic approach. Special acknowledgement is due to Kenneth Pike for his innovation and development of the tagmemic model. With its integrated view of language as part of the whole of human behaviour and, in turn, of ordered creation, I find the model very congenial. Kenneth Pike, Austin Hale, and other colleagues of the Summer Institute of Linguistics provided valuable stimulus during workshops in Nepal in 1969 and 1971-2.

In October 1970 I joined the Department of Linguistics within the Institute of Advanced Studies at the Australian National University, and acknowledge with gratitude the University's grant of a scholarship including generous provision for a field trip to Nepal. Professor Stephen Wurm,
as head of the department, has given advice and assistance in many matters, and Drs. C. L. Voorhoeve and T. E. Dutton, as my principal supervisors, have offered valuable criticisms on my work. I have also benefitted from comments by Miss Christine Kilham, a fellow student in the department, on portions of the study. If I have not implemented their suggestions fully the result is doubtless the poorer for it.

I am grateful to Mrs. Sue Tys for the photo-ready typing.

My indebtedness to my wife, Jessie, is difficult to express adequately. She has provided (in addition to the oft taken for granted physical support, both in Nepal and in Canberra) opinions on Gurung structure, comments on drafts, and constant encouragement, which has all indeed proved essential to the completion of the thesis.

Finally, this work is dedicated to the glory of Jesus Christ. Were it not for His overruling love, my life would lack any real meaning, and would certainly not have been spent, even in part, in the study of linguistics in the lovely country of Nepal, nor would this thesis have been undertaken or completed.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

TITLE PAGE i
DECLARATION ii
ABSTRACT iii
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS iv
TABLE OF CONTENTS vi
LISTS OF TABLES AND FIGURES ix
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS x
GUIDE TO ORTHOGRAPHY xiii

CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION 1
1.1 Geographical location 1
1.2 Linguistic classification and comparison 5
  1.2.1 General classifications 5
  1.2.2 Detailed comparative studies 13
1.3 Previous descriptions 14
1.4 Aim of the present study 19

CHAPTER TWO: SEMEMIC STRUCTURE 25
2.1 Role level 25
2.2 Increment level 31
2.3 Statement level 36
  2.3.1 Conjunction 38
  2.3.2 Disjunction 41
  2.3.3 Implication 41
  2.3.4 Paraphrase 47
  2.3.5 Temporal connection 50
2.4 Response level 52

CHAPTER THREE: CLAUSE LEVEL 60
3.1 On classifying clause patterns 60
3.2 Grammatical structure of clauses 66
3.3 The staging system 78
  3.3.1 Word order 79
  3.3.2 Topic-marking particles 83
  3.3.3 Emphatic particles 86
  3.3.4 Deletion and afterthoughts 87
LIST OF TABLES

1. Segmental phonemes xiii
2. Cognate percentages within the Bodish Substock 12
3. Case particles 67
4. Grammatical clause patterns 71
5. Aspect-mood suffixes 110
6. Subordinator suffixes 111
7. Pronouns 118
8. Noun classes defined by plural markers 121
9. Conjunctions at various levels 125
10. Encoding potential of multiclausal sentences 140
11. Monologue paragraph nuclei 156

LIST OF FIGURES

1. Map of Nepal and location of Gurung language 3
2. Map of Gurung territory 4
3. Bodic Microphylum 9
4. Rai Stock 10
5. Limbu Subfamily 11
6. Chepang Substock 12
7. Kham Subfamily 12
8. Tibetan Family 13
9. Gurung Family 13
10. Implicational relations 42
11. Cast of PR-SO predicates in text HM 59
12. Hale's transitivity matrix 63
13. Grammatical and sememic features of a tagmeme 70
14. Contrasts of two-place clause patterns 74
15. Grammatical sentence types 139
16. Sememic relations of variants of Condition and Concession Sentences 146
### LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Throughout this description abbreviations appear in upper case when employed in the morpheme-by-morpheme gloss, or when referring to language names, to slots or constructions on the DISCOURSE or PARAGRAPH levels, or sememic relations of the response level. They appear with upper case initial when referring to slots or constructions on the Sentence, Clause, or Phrase levels, or to roles or statement level relations. They appear in lower case when referring to slots or constructions at word level or below, or to sememic relations of the increment level.

Upper case letters used as speaker identifications are listed separately below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>agentive; appositional; axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad</td>
<td>adjunct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aj</td>
<td>adjective; adjective root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ajr</td>
<td>adjective root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ans</td>
<td>answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antith</td>
<td>antithesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar</td>
<td>axis-relator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aux</td>
<td>auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>av</td>
<td>adverb(ial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avl</td>
<td>available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avzr</td>
<td>adverbializer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>base; benefactive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bro</td>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu</td>
<td>buildup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>coordinate; noninstitutive cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cj</td>
<td>conjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cl</td>
<td>classifier; clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cm</td>
<td>colour marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmp</td>
<td>comparative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmt</td>
<td>comitative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp</td>
<td>complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conc</td>
<td>concurrent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cond</td>
<td>conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conf</td>
<td>conflict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conss</td>
<td>concessional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpd</td>
<td>compound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep</td>
<td>dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des</td>
<td>descriptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desid</td>
<td>desiderative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di</td>
<td>discovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dial</td>
<td>dialogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlvs</td>
<td>derived loan verb stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dpns</td>
<td>derived personal noun stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtr</td>
<td>ditransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dub</td>
<td>dubitative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>elder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enum</td>
<td>enumerative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
<td>ergative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ess</td>
<td>esseive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et</td>
<td>eldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ev</td>
<td>evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex</td>
<td>exclamation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exch</td>
<td>exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excl</td>
<td>exclusive of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exl</td>
<td>existential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expl</td>
<td>explanatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expo</td>
<td>exposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>factitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fem</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fin</td>
<td>final comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>goal; Gurung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ge</td>
<td>gerund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ho</td>
<td>hortatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hort</td>
<td>hortatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hund</td>
<td>hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hy</td>
<td>hypothetical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>im</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incl</td>
<td>inclusive of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind</td>
<td>independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interr</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intr</td>
<td>introducer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itr</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>3rd person hortatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li</td>
<td>locative-intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltr</td>
<td>locative-transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>modified; modified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mar</td>
<td>margin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>med</td>
<td>mediation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>Nepali; neutral; noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narr</td>
<td>narrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nec</td>
<td>necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg</td>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>np</td>
<td>nonpast; noun phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>npr</td>
<td>proper noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nr</td>
<td>noun root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuc</td>
<td>nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>object; old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>patient; phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>para</td>
<td>paragraph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paraph</td>
<td>paraphrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per</td>
<td>personal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perzr</td>
<td>personalizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peri</td>
<td>periphery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pfc</td>
<td>post-funeral ceremony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ph</td>
<td>past habituative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plup</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pr</td>
<td>protracted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pred</td>
<td>predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prelim</td>
<td>preliminary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro</td>
<td>proposal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prob</td>
<td>probabilitative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proc</td>
<td>procedure; procedural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prop</td>
<td>proposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pu</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pr-so</td>
<td>problem-solving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qe</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qo</td>
<td>quotative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>range</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>redup</td>
<td>reduplicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref</td>
<td>reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rem</td>
<td>remark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>res</td>
<td>result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reso</td>
<td>resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resp</td>
<td>response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rp</td>
<td>repetitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rq</td>
<td>request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>sentence; source; stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seq</td>
<td>sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sp</td>
<td>specifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sp-c</td>
<td>countering speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sp-i</td>
<td>initiating speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sp-r</td>
<td>resolving speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>src</td>
<td>source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stat</td>
<td>stative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su</td>
<td>surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>temporal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term</td>
<td>terminus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tn</td>
<td>tentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>topic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>um</td>
<td>unmarked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ur</td>
<td>unreal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vp</td>
<td>verb phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vr</td>
<td>verb root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>experiencer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>younger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yt</td>
<td>youngest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Speaker Identifications (and home village, and approximate age in 1971, of native speakers of Gurung):

- **B** Baidara Gurung, Ghacok, 66.
- **D** Deu Bahadur Gurung, Ghacok, 26.
- **G** Gau Suba Gurungsine, Rije, 50.
- **H** Mrs. Hindumaya Burgess, Thak, 26.
- **J** the author's wife.
- **K** Ras Kumari Gurungsini, Ghacok, 29.
- **R** Ram Phal Gurung, Ghacok, 35.
- **S** Ser Bahadur Gurung, Ghacok, 50.
- **U** Gunja Sing Gurung, Ghacok, 20.
- **W** the author.
- **X** hypothetical
- **Y** hypothetical
GUIDE TO ORTHOGRAPHY

In citing Gurung forms I use a practical text orthography which is a transliteration of the Devanagari script as applied to Gurung. Table 1 sets out the symbols used for segmental phonemes.

Consonants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labial</th>
<th>Dental</th>
<th>Retroflex</th>
<th>Apicoalveolar</th>
<th>Velar</th>
<th>Glottal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stops:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl. unasp. p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>ʈ</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl. asp. ph</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>ʈʰ</td>
<td>ch</td>
<td>kʰ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vd. b</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>ɖ</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirants</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasals</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ŋ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral</td>
<td>l</td>
<td></td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flap</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semivowels</td>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vowels:

Front | Central | Back

High | i | u |
Mid | e | a | o |

Table 1. Segmental phonemes.

Also contrastive are the suprasegmental features of:

- nasalization (symbolized by ı)
- breathiness (symbolized by x¹)

¹The positioning of x in the orthography represents my Gurung friends' preferences for the position of the Devanagari symbol ḡ "h"; that is, preceding the vowel, and the consonants y, r, and w, except in the prefix ax-.
accents, or high tone (symbolized by ')
vowel length (symbolized by -)
The symbols given represent unit phonemes, combinations of which interact to produce special phonetic realizations in the following cases:

(i) Geminate central vowel. The most commonly lengthened vowel is a, but there is considerable variation between speakers as to the quality of the geminate a. In the speech of my major informant, Deu Bahadur, the lengthened vowel was lower in articulatory position, in addition to being phonetically longer or, occasionally, rearticulated. In the speech of his wife, Ras Kumari, on the other hand, the lengthened vowel had the same mid central articulation, [ʌ], as the short vowel. The reason for this variation appears to be that the language is in transition from a five to a six vowel system. The adoption of a second central vowel, with lower articulatory position, is probably influenced by Nepali, which has two central vowels.

(ii) Palatalization. The apico-alveolar affricates and fricative coalesce with a following y to become alveopalatal: syá·mgo [šá·mgo] 'billy', cyq [tšq] 'trap'. The same palatalizing process normally occurs before the front vowels i and e: jxi·gö [džh̊i·g]|g] 'rice straws', séba [šēbʌ] 'to dance'. Word medially, however, it fluctuates: ba·je [ba·džɛ] ~ [ba·dɛ] 'grandfather', and I have found three words where it never occurs: ɛxi [tsi] 'undergrowth', ɛi [tsi] 'splinter', and širibá [širibʌ]

---

2 The man's contrastive system is likely to dominate also because of the greater phonetic distance he establishes between the two syllable nuclei, thus enhancing the efficiency of the language as a signalling system. This would be in accord with the first principle of analogic change enunciated by Jerzy Kuryłowicz (1966:162):

'A bipartite morpheme tends to assimilate an isofunctional morpheme which consists uniquely of one of the two elements, that is to say, the compound morpheme replaces the simple morpheme.'

Thus, lam [lʌm] 'do', but la·m [D: lɑ·m] ~ [K: lʌ·m] 'heat'.

---
'to spin thread (?)'.

(iii) Aspiration of voiced stops. Before breathy vowels, voiced stops and affricates are aspirated: 
\[dx \{ [dh^h] \} 'house', gxá· [g^h^h] 'wound', \] but the aspiration of the voiced segments is not independently contrastive, being conditioned by the breathy quality of the following vowel. Aspirated voiced stops are not separate phonemes in Gurung. In the same way, there is some phonetic breathiness of the semivowels y and w and the resonant r before breathy vowels - which is phonetic support for my informants' preference for writing the x symbolizing breathiness before these three segments when they occur prevocally: 
\[xya·bá [y^h^h^h] 'to go', xri [r^h^h] 'bamboo', \]
\[xwá·bá [w^h^h^h] 'to flatter', ñxyó [ñy^h^h] 'we (inclusive)', \]
\[pxré [pr^h^h] 'eight'. \]

The phonetically conditioned 'voiced aspiration' is quite distinct from the phonemically contrastive aspiration of voiceless segments before clear vowels: 
\[pi-f \{ [pi] \} 'was ashamed', phi-f \{ [phi] \} 'bore', pxi \{ [p] \} 'carrying basket'. \]
In the basic form of roots aspirated voiceless stops do not precede breathy vowels. However, in the negative forms of verbs whose stems belong to the 'high clear' tone class, there is a morphophonemic 'spreading' of breathiness from the negative prefix to the stem (Glover and Glover 1972:30). If the latter has an initial voiceless

---

3Because of the phonetic contrast, which is minimal contrast in the case of \[dx\] with \[cxi \{ [t^sh] \} 'knee', \] I earlier (Glover 1969a:14) described the alveopalatal segments, wherever they occurred, as clusters of the apicoalveolar series with y. This led to an orthography too unwieldy for literacy purposes. An overwhelming economy in representation is achieved by writing the simple apicoalveolar symbols before front vowels and positing a phonetic rule which palatalizes the segments in that environment. The cost of this economy is that in any technical description an ad hoc marking (\(t, s\)) is required for the three exceptional words to show that they do not undergo the palatalizing rule before front vowels.

4The intersection of the features of accent and
aspirated segment, the result is a combination of aspiration and breathiness in the one syllable: \( kh'\hat{\alpha}.ba \) [\( kh'\hat{\alpha}.b\hat{\alpha} \)] 'to be able', \( a\hat{xh}kh'\hat{\alpha}.ba \) [\( \lambda^hkh'\hat{\alpha}.h\hat{\alpha} \)] 'to be unable'.

(iv) The phonemic sequence /kʰ/ is realized as a voiceless lateral fricative with palatal release, [ʰv]. It is represented in the orthography by a conventional kh\( k\). (because my Gurung friends insist on this cluster as the nearest possible Devanagari approximation to the actual phonetic realization). The interpretation of the segment as phonemically /kʰ/ is based on considerations of symmetry, distribution, and comparative evidence from other Gurung dialects and from Tamang (Glover 1969a:26-7).

(v) Accent and breathiness interact to determine the pitch of syllables. Earlier I gave an item-arrangement treatment of the phenomenon (Glover 1969a:55-6), but the following rules seem more helpful. Roughly, a scheme of three pitch levels can be considered: high, mid, low. Mid is unmarked; voiced stop or affricate, or a breathy vowel, or both, in the initial syllable lower the pitch of the word; accent on a syllable cancels a previous lowering (restoring mid) or raises the pitch, of the accented syllable alone, to high in the absence of any previous lowering; a breathy accented syllable exhibits a low-to-mid pitch glide (symbolized \([v]\) : mx\( \dot{e} \) [m\( \ddot{e}h\)] 'cow', mx\( \hat{a}.\hat{\alpha} \) [m\( \dot{a}.\dot{h}\hat{\alpha} \)] 'gold', dxajúra.

Breathiness defines four tone classes for monosyllables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accent</th>
<th>Breathiness</th>
<th>Tone Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High, clear</td>
<td>Mid, clear</td>
<td>[v]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It thus appears that Ramanujan and Masica (1968:570) are incorrect, from a phonological point of view, in their tentative classification of Gurung, along with Newari, in their group A, manifesting 'maximum utilization of aspiration, i.e. both voiced and voiceless, sometimes also with nasals, liquids, and semi-vowels'. Rather Gurung belongs in their group B, with 'aspiration in voiceless but not voiced stops', and it has in addition the contrastive feature of breathy vowel quality.
Verb suffixes have morphophonemic variants (in length of the vowel a, and in accent) according to the tone class of the verb stem (Glover and Glover 1972:26ff.). The basic form of suffixes, without accent and with short a, occurs with stems of Group 1 (high clear) and Group 4 (low breathy): ná-bá 'to pain', txu-mála 'would have been necessary'. With stems of Group 3 (rising breathy), an accent is induced on the first syllable of the suffix: txu-mála 'would have sewn', ṭxe-bá 'to spill'. With stems of Group 2 (mid clear), the vowel of the first syllable of the suffix is lengthened to ə if and only if (1) its basic form is a, and (2) the stem is monosyllabic: bo-bá 'to bring', gãgã-dí-bá 'to twist', bi-di 'said'. And an accent is induced on the first syllable of the suffix if and only if the stem does not begin with a voiced stop or affricate: 6 caidi-bá 'to need', pi-bá 'to give', ca-mála 'would have eaten'.

If the stem is compound the accent of the suffix is governed by the second root of the compound, but the vowel is always short: ṭẽ-bá 'to put', bi-ṭẽ-bá 'to name'; ṭxu-bá 'to sew', ṭxú-xya·-bá 'to finish sewing'.

6 The rule for accents induced on the verb suffix by Group 2 stems is not fully clear to me. It appears that the accent appears on the second syllable, not the first, if the vowel of the first syllable is i and if there is a second syllable (or clitic): la-i-mú 'have done', ta-i ró 'became, it is said'. Also, certain suffixes such as -la 'pluperfect' do not accept the accent with Group 2 stems: mu-la 'was', mrq-la 'saw', although it does take the accent with Group 3 stems: jxq-lá 'put'.
INTRODUCTION

This language is essentially a colloquial one, and there is practically no grammar at all. In Magarkura many of the words defy spelling, in Gurungkura they nearly all do.

G. W. P. Money (1918:24)

1.1 Geographical location. Gurung is a language spoken in the central west of Nepal. According to the report of the 1961 Census of Nepal, 157,778 persons claimed Gurung as their mother tongue, of whom most (146,600) lived in the western hills, especially in the districts of Lamjung, Syangja, Kaski, Gorkha, Tanahun, and Dhading.

Outside Nepal Gurung communities exist in the Darjeeling district of West Bengal, India, and at Gurkha Brigade posts of the Indian Army throughout India, and of the British Army in Hong Kong and Malaysia. However these communities do not in general use the Gurung language, replacing it with Nepali and major Indian languages. I have observed that Gurung children returning to Nepal from military posts can converse with their village relatives only in Nepali while the latter converse among themselves in Gurung. This fact may help to explain the discrepancy between the 1951 Census of India, reporting 25,556 speakers of Gurung (Gopalaswami 1954:12), and the 1961 Census of India, which enumerated

---

1 'Gurung' is the most common name for the language in the literature. Although Burton-Page (1955:111), following the usage of military manuals such as Money (1918), says 'Gurungkura is the Nepali name' for the language, my observation has been that in colloquial Nepali speech in western Nepal the Gurung language is also frequently referred to as gurā bha·śa· 'Gurung language', and educated Nepalese prefer this form. Gurung speakers themselves refer to their language as ō mā kxyūi 'Gurung language'.
only 82 (Mitra 1964:154). The latter figure probably represents the 'amalgamation of other mother tongues with Nepali' which language showed an increase in India of over 200% to some 570,000 in the decade 1951-61 (Mitra 1964:xiii). Konow (in Grierson 1967[1909]:182) noted already at that time that Gurungs outside Western Nepal tend 'to abandon their old dialect in favour of [Nepali]'.

Money (1918:iii) reports that there is considerable variation amongst Gurung dialects in lexicon, a fact which my informants emphatically endorse. However I am not aware of any available systematic treatment of the variation. The dialect treated in this thesis is that represented by Deu Bahadur Gurung (hereafter D) and his wife, Ras Kumari (hereafter K), both born and bred in the village of Ghacok, about six mile northwest of Pokhara, in Kaski district. There is some variation from speaker to speaker within the village, and more particularly from village to village. Variation is especially evident in the system of suprasegmentals, in the form of some verb affixes (such as -i ~ -di ~ -ji 'past tense' and -mu ~ -my 'nonpast tense'), and in the degree of assimilation of loanwords from Hindi and Nepali. However the speech of D and K is representative of the majority of the village, and of what the Gurung people themselves designate as a single speech form used and understood, despite variations, in the western part of the language area (see maps, Figs. 1 and 2, on following pages, based on Pignède 1966:25-6, and used by permission of the publishers, Mouton & Co.). As this description is not concerned with minor dialectal variation I have, where necessary, regularized examples to conform with D's idiolect.

2Hugoniot (1970:64) reports Gurung as included on the 1956 Tribal Map of India (based on the 1951 Census), but the 1967 map, based on the 1961 Census, does not include Gurung in its list of tribes.

3Sten Konow was wholly responsible for Vol. III of the Linguistic Survey of India, covering Tibeto-Burman languages, although the whole work appears under Grierson's name.
Fig. 1. Nepal and the location of the Gurung language (from Pignède 1966:25).
Fig. 2. GURUNG TERRITORY (from Pignede 1966:26)

KEY TO SELECTED VILLAGES

Where both Nepali and Gurung names are known for a village the latter is parenthesized.
The people of Ghacok claim that there are two dialects of Gurung, eastern and western, with a relation of unidirectional intelligibility. If they travel to the eastern part of the language area, beyond Lamjung, they cannot understand the Gurung speech there, they say, but they claim the people of Lamjung can understand the western dialect. The former statement is supported by reactions I observed in Ghacok to a tape of eastern Gurung speech, which listeners pronounced unintelligible. The tape of eastern Gurung and a primer published in the eastern dialect (Gurung 1971) indicate that the eastern dialect has assimilated Nepali loans more widely, a fact independently stated by my friends in Ghacok. It does not seem likely, however, that this factor would contribute to the non-intelligibility of the eastern dialect to western speakers travelling there, since the latter are generally bilingual in Nepali and (western) Gurung.

The most detailed ethnographic descriptions available of the Gurung people are by Pignède (1966) and Macfarlane (1972), whose studies were conducted primarily in the villages of Mohoriya and Thak respectively. The latter study deals particularly with demographic and economic aspects of Gurung village life. Kihara (1957:79-85), Leonard (Ministry of Defence 1965), and Bista (1972:75-85) devote brief chapters to the Gurung people, and a number of travelogues and general works on Nepal include passing references (Tuker 1957:271, Hagen 1961:67-8, Snellgrove 1963) or report Gurung legends (Northey 1937:9-10, Chemjong 1967). J. Glover (1972) has written on Gurung witchcraft beliefs, and the fear of spirits is also the subject of Silverstone and Miller's book (1964) for children.

1.2 Linguistic classification and comparison.
1.21 General classifications. In the Linguistic Survey of India Sten Konow noted that (Grierson 1967[1909]:10,12)

"on the whole, it is impossible to classify the Tibeto-Burman dialects satisfactorily"

but that a dialect chain can be traced, inter alia,
'from the Tibetan, through the Himalayan languages, into Bodo and further into Kuki-Chin. Those latter dialects then gradually merge into Burmese.'

Following Hodgson (1847), Konow divides the Himalayan languages (excluding Sherpa and other Bhotia dialects which he treats under Tibetan) into two groups, simple (or non-pronominalized) and complex (or pronominalized), depending on whether the subject pronoun is (redundantly) repeated as a verb suffix (p. 177). He placed (p. 274) Gurung, along with Magári, Newári, and Murmí, in the former group, and Rai and Limbu languages (except Sunwār) in the latter. Concerning Thāksya, Konow wrote (p. 406)

'Our information ... is very unsatisfactory. I am unable to decide whether the dialect belongs to the pronominalized or to the non-pronominalized class.'

He also remarks (p. 182) that

'Gurung is more closely related to Tibetan than are most Himalayan languages.'

Shafer (1955, 1966) divides Sino-Tibetan into 'six main divisions: Sinitic (Chinese), Daic (Thai), Bodic (Tibetan, etc.), Burmic (Burmese, etc.), Baric (Bodo, etc.), and Karenic (Karen)' (1966:1). He rejects the term Tibeto-Burman on the grounds that the Sino-Tibetan family does not divide into two sub-families, Tibeto-Burman and Chinese-Siamese. Rather, on the basis of a tally of vocabulary comparisons based on phonetic equations between the languages he regards Tibetan as 'genetically closer to Chinese than to Burmese' and Chinese as considerably closer to Tibetan than to Thai (1955:97).

4 Murmi and Thaksya, with various diacritic marks, are the names used by earlier writers for the languages now locally and officially called Tamang and Thakali respectively (Bista 1972, Taylor 1969:1, Hari 1969:1, His Majesty's Government 1966). Tuker (1957:271) says that the term Murmi covered all the Tamangs and some Lamas, but in fact there is no separate tribe called Lama. I suspect that the Lamas he refers to were actually a subgroup of Tamangs, the Buddhist priests. Bista (1972:58) reports that 'all non-Tamangs, when trying to be polite, use the flattering term 'Lama' for any Tamang individual.' The Gurung term for Tamang is lám-maŋ.
Shafer placed Gurung, Murmi, and Thāksya in the Gurung Branch of the Bodish Section of the Bodic Division (1955:101). Voegelin and Voegelin (1965:3) describe Sino-Tibetan as a phylum containing nine families – Chinese, Kam-Thai, Miao-Yao, Burmese-Lolo, Karen, Bodo-Naga1-Kachin, Naga2-Chin, Gyarung-Mishmi, and Tibetan. Their last two families are jointly coextensive with Shafer's Bodic Division, but exclude his admittedly dubious Dzorgaish. However, the choice of a dividing line between the two families is curious: their Tibetan family comprises all but two Branches (Rgyarong and Gurung) of Shafer's Bodish Section, while their Gyarung-Mishmi family comprises those two Branches plus the other nine Sections of Shafer's Bodic Division (Voegelin and Voegelin 1965:33, Shafer 1955:100-2). Voegelin and Voegelin set up three groupings within their Gyarung-Mishmi family: a western complex, a pronominalized group, and a non-pronominalized group. Gurung and Murmi are included in the lastnamed, while Thāksya (Thāksya in Konow and Shafer, Thakāli in current usage in Nepal) is listed in the pronominalized group with a note echoing Konow's uncertainty on its classification.

Voegelin and Voegelin seem to have relied on typological samenesses and differences in establishing their groupings (1965:35,52).

Lexicostatistical analysis supports Shafer's classification as against Konow's and Voegelin and Voegelin's. Using Swadesh 100-word lists, supplied mostly by members of the

---

Shafer sought to establish a hierarchy of terms – family, division, section, branch, unit – to describe groupings of languages in a 'descending scale of importance' (1955:99). I prefer the system proposed by Swadesh (1954:326) where the terms used denote more or less absolute degrees of relationship of constituent languages (in terms of percentage of shared vocabulary), and, hence, the relative degree of inclusiveness of the terms. The terms Swadesh proposed, and the percentage of shared cognates based on his 200-word list appropriate to each term, are: macrophyllum (less than 1%), mesophylum (1-4%), microphyllum (4-12%), stock (12-36%), family (36-81%), and language (81-100%).
Summer Institute of Linguistics in Nepal, for thirtysix
Sino-Tibetan languages I arrived at the relationships
represented in the accompanying tree diagrams. 6

In labelling groupings of languages I have modified
Swadesh's definition of terms, following Wurm (1961) and
others who have worked in Papua New Guinea, by setting the
boundary between stock and family at 28% instead of 36%, and
I have adjusted the percentages for equivalent time-depths 7
to correspond to the apparently less mutable 100-word list
which Swadesh proposed (1955) in place of his earlier
200-word list. The lower limit (of cognate percentage)
figures for each term are, on the basis of the 100-word list:
language (500 years) 86%; family (3000 years) 40%; stock
(5000 years) 22%; microphylum (7500 years) 11%; mesophylum
(10,000 years) 5%; macrophylum (more than 10,000 years)
less than 5%. To gain flexibility in a hierarchy of terms
I have also used the intermediate terms (with approximate
boundary figures as shown) of subfamily (1500 years) 64%;

6 The sources of the lists are given in Appendix 2. I
noted, by inspection, what appeared as probable cognates and
had the data processed by computer at the Australian National
University, Canberra. In calculating percentages, loans
from Nepali or other Indo-Aryan languages were excluded. Mr
Robert Crago wrote the necessary computer programme. An
earlier version of the classification, covering only ten
languages, is included in Glover (1969a) and Hale and Pike

7 Time depths are calculated on the assumption (from
Swadesh 1954,1955) that a language retains 86% of the 100-word
list over one millennium, but only 80.5% of the 200-word list.
The time depth figures must be treated with caution, however,
as there is evidence that rates of change are neither uniform
across languages, in Swadesh's own data, nor constant within
any one language, as evidenced by Pulleyblank (1972) for
Chinese. Lexicostatistics gives only a rough first
approximation to linguistic groupings: it is not a precision
tool! However this does not gainsay the fact that the
relative percentages of shared vocabulary within a set of
languages provide a basis for initial hypotheses on
classificatory groupings, which hypotheses can serve to
suggest probably fruitful areas for detailed comparative
study.
substock (4000 years) 30%; subphylum (6000 years) 16%.

The lexicostatistical analysis finds all the languages as members of a microphylum, called, after Shafer, the Bodic Microphylum (Fig. 3).

---

For each node in the diagrams of language relationships I have given a percentage figure representing the amount of shared vocabulary (of the Swadesh 100-word list) and, in most cases, a label to identify the grouping dominated by the node. The labels for the larger groupings are, as far as possible, in line with Shafer (1955). The labels I have coined are obviously of a tentative nature, but I offer them in the belief that they may form a useful framework for subsequent, more detailed, discussion of relationships between languages of Nepal.
In the Microphylum are two subphyla, Central Himalayish and East Himalayish, the latter comprising the Rai Stock (Fig. 4) and the Limbu Subfamily (Fig. 5). The Rai lists represent what the respective speakers identify as different languages, but the six Limbu lists are identified only by place names, as the speakers all claimed that they spoke the Limbu language.

The 17% figure linking the two subphyla is only an indicative typical figure. Percentages between particular languages range fairly widely, as is only to be expected of this level of separation, assuming random replacement of vocabulary items. For example, percentages between languages of the Gurung Family and the Rai Stock range from 10 to 20%.
Within the Central Himalayish Subphylum is a language isolate, Newari, and the West Central Himalayish Stock. The Stock (cf. Shafer's Section of the same name) contains the Chepang Substock (Fig. 6), the Kham Subfamily (Fig. 7), apparently not recorded by Shafer, and the Bodish Substock.

10 Newari presents problems in classification, possibly because of Sanskrit influence during its long history of cultural contact with Indo-Aryan communities. Shafer (1955) regarded it as 'probably Bodic, possibly Burmic, certainly not Baric'. Cognate percentages with other languages of the Central Himalayish Subphylum mostly lie in the range 16 to 20%, with a few lower such as Maikot Kham at 13%, Taka-shera Kham and Eastern Tamang at 14%. Hence the figure of 20% shown in Fig. 3. But the cognate count with Chepang gives 26%. Chepang, and Kaike, give anomalously high cognate counts with other languages. I am unable to offer any explanation.

11 The Raji and Magar lists, within the Chepang Substock, have high proportions of Nepali loan words, 31 and 22 items respectively, which makes classification less sure as the exclusion of such large numbers of items may distort the cognate percentages.
Sec. 1.2

Chepang Substock

32%

Raji  Chepang  Magar

Fig. 6. Chepang Substock.

Kham Subfamily

70%

Babang  Maikot  Taka-shera

Fig. 7. Kham Subfamily.

The Bodish Substock (cf. Shafer’s Bodish Section) contains the Tibetan Family (Fig. 8, cf. Shafer’s Central Bodish Unit of the Bodish Branch) and the Gurung Family (Fig. 9, cf. Shafer’s Gurung Branch), with Kaire and Ghale, both unrecorded by Shafer, intermediate between the two families. The maximum cognate percentages between languages of the subgroups within the Substock are shown in Table 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Gurung</th>
<th>Ghale</th>
<th>Kaire</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ghale</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaire</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibetan</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Cognate percentages within the Bodish Substock.

The Gurung Family is represented in my data by (western)
Gurung, Thakali, Manang, and East and West Tamang.

Fig. 8. Tibetan Family.

Fig. 9. Gurung Family.

1.22 Detailed comparisons. Shafer (1967:123-7) established a number of phonetic equations for Gurung, Tamang, and Thakali, illustrating the unity of his Gurung Branch (here called the Gurung Family) and its connection to Tibetan rather than Burmese. His work appears to be based entirely on Hodgson's and Konow's lists. Pittman and J. Glover (1970)
used much fuller data on dialects of the same three languages to set up detailed phonetic equations for vowels, initial consonants, and the suprasegmental features of (in Gurung) breathiness and accent. They offered reconstructed forms for some 140 monosyllabic nouns and verb roots.

Pittman (1970) drew attention to parallels to the Gurung Family suprasegmentals in two other languages of the West Central Himalayan stock, Sherpa and Chepang, and this work formed a basis for my typological comparison with the feature of register in Mon-Khmer languages (Glover 1971).

Hale (1970a, b) compared the phonological systems of Gurung, Western Tamang, Thakali, and four other languages of the Bodic Microphylum - Newari, Sherpa, Chepang, and Sunwar - and published word lists from the seven languages.

An overview of Sino-Tibetan reconstruction, with special attention to Tibeto-Burman (but not apparently citing any forms from languages of the Gurung Family) is provided by Benedict (1972).

1.3 Previous descriptions.13 Probably the first published material on the Gurung language is Hodgson (1847), a corrected and enlarged version being included in Hodgson (1971[1874]: II.29-36). He lists (1847:1237) ten 'races as they occur, in tolerably regular series, from west to east'. He correctly locates the Gurung west of the valley of Kathmandu, but has apparently erred in placing the Sunwar also west of the valley and north of the Gurung. Today the Sunwar inhabit the eastern hills (His Majesty's Government 1966) and there is no evidence in their permanent settlements there that they migrated from 200 miles to the northwest within the last century.

Hodgson appended twelve word lists for the ten races, (giving three - written Tibetan, spoken Tibetan, and Sherpa -

---

13 Hugoniot (1970:64) gives the most recent and complete bibliography available on Gurung, and other languages of Nepal.
for his first 'race' of 'Cis-Himalayan Bhotias'), containing 194 vocabulary items for each (less lacunae). There is no distinction of retroflex versus dental stops, no treatment of tone, nor a consistent marking of vowel nasalization. Hodgson marked a length contrast on all vowels, but this is of doubtful validity phonologically. There is no indication for any of his lists what dialect is represented, and many of the items of the Gurung list are markedly different from the modern Ghacok dialect or, more generally, western Gurung. However, Hodgson's work remains a landmark, and served as the source for many who dealt with the area later but for whom Nepal was more or less inaccessible.14

Hunter (1868:18,19) notes that the materials available for his 'comparative dictionary' were of varying quality and, as a result, tone could not be represented and dental and retroflex stops are 'frequently confounded'.

Beames (1868) included in his 'purely elementary work', designed as a guide to the non-linguist wishing to record local dialects, the first ten numerals in twentythree dialects of his Himalayic class, including Gurung and Murmi (Tamang). Like Hunter and Hodgson he fails to note the retroflexion of the stop in the forms Gurung ù Murmi dhu 'six'. His list differs somewhat from Hodgson's - his Gurung ku 'one' differs markedly from both Hodgson's krī, Hunter's k̂rī, ri, and the Ghacok form g̰r̰i [g̰r̰h̰h] observable today. This aberrancy, together with his placing of Gurung, along with Murmi, in the eastern hills of Nepal (1868:6), suggests that Beames' informant was atypical, perhaps one who had emigrated to the east of Nepal in the wake of the Gurkha conquest in the 18th century.15

14 Much of his article is included practically verbatim, but without acknowledgement, in Vansittart (1894). His word lists formed the primary source for Hunter (1868), and his material was drawn on as late as Shafer (1967:124).

15 There are Gurung communities in eastern Nepal today, as at Rumjatar. However they have Nepali as mother tongue and no longer speak the Gurung language.
Brandreth (1878) offers a classification of the 'non-Aryan languages of India'. He divides Tibeto-Burman into over a dozen classes, placing Tibetan in Class II and, in Class III, Gurung, Murmi, Thaksya, Newar, Pahri, Magar, 'and all those languages of Nepal, which, like the Tibetan, are said to be of the simple type, the verb having no suffixes of number or person'. He further links Gurung and Murmi as 'very closely related' (but omits Thaksya). Regarding the languages of Nepal generally, and some other Tibeto-Burman classes, Brandreth states 'tones are generally of two kinds, described as the abrupt or short, and the pausing or heavy' (1878:10).

Konow's observations on Gurung and Murmi (Grierson 1967[1909]:182-96) were based on a written word and phrase list and a translation of the Parable of the Prodigal Son supplied by the Nepalese Government office in Kathmandu. There is still no treatment of tone, and Konow notes (p. 182) that 'it is often difficult to decide whether a vowel is long or short, the spelling of the specimens being inconsistent'. However, the Devanagari medium of the specimens meant that the retroflexion of stops was indicated, as in the forms टू 'six' cited for both Gurung and Murmi (p. 254).

Konow attempts a latinate description of the morphology, but this is marred by the inadequacy of phonetic representation and by errors in translation. Thus he states (p. 185) for the Gurung 'verb substantive' that the 'third base is टा or टू in ... तब-मू, shall be; न्गा लाल तम-मू, I should be'. In fact, these are quite distinct roots टा- 'be, become' and टो- 'be, become'.

---

16 This statement is true of Gurung, but not of all the languages he lists. Newari, for example, has a system of person markers involving two terms, conjunct and disjunct, defined with respect to the discourse (Hale 1972b:3).

17 In stating (p. 183) that 'tones and accents are probably the same as in other Nepal languages' Konow may have had in mind Brandreth's generalization (1878:10) cited above. Burton-Page (1955:111) ridiculed Konow's statement, but his own analysis in fact supported Brandreth.
Sec. 1.3

ţxu- 'should, must', and the second of the examples cited is presumably (in Ghacok dialect) ŋa ła-la ţxu-mu 'I should do', not 'I should be' which would be ŋa ta-l ţxu-mu.

Konow's work is instructive in pointing out links between Gurung and Tibetan, such as the final n on some pronoun forms, which he correctly identifies as an intensifying particle and suggests comparison with Tibetan ni (p. 185). However an error in this area is his identification of kurā 'word' with Tibetan sgra (p. 183). The former is not a Gurung word, but a borrowing from Nepali.

Money (1918:24-9) gives brief notes on the traditional parts of speech - nouns, adjectives, adverbs, etc. - in Gurung, and includes some Gurung items in his word lists.

Burton-Page's study (1955) is, in contrast with earlier work, excellent in terms of phonetic accuracy. He analyzed a system of tone, contrastive with reference to the word, having two values, Tone-1 and Tone-2. In the terms of my analysis, the feature he described is breathiness, symbolized here by x. His Tone-1 is [- breathy] and Tone-2 [+ breathy]. It is curious that he failed to recognize also the feature here called accent, and symbolized '. Thus Burton-Page cites (in my orthography) ɖi 'seven' contrasting with ɖxì 'two' (ɖxì in Ghacok dialect), but missed ɖì 'we (exclusive)'. Other minimal pairs establishing the significance of the feature of accent are ca 'vein', cā 'he'; kxì 'you', kxì 'thatch'; mì 'eye', mì 'name'; lxa·ba 'chase', lxa·bá 'shake'; tēbá 'pour into a vessel', tēba 'take out'.

Burton-Page's second study (1955:117-9) deals with 'rhotacized' vowels, the phonetic realizations of Gurung forms cognate with Tibetan stop-plus-r clusters. The study is regarded by Miller (1969:437) as of great value 'since it involves an area of comparative phonology particularly important for the differentiation of many otherwise closely similar Tibetan dialects'. Phonemically, there is no contrast between these rhotacized sounds and the retroflexed stops of words borrowed from Nepali, and I am unable to separate the two series phonetically. Burton-Page states
that 'there is no aspirated member, *trh, of the rhotacized tr/’tr term in the system' (1955:119). However the word țhă·gu 'oldest son' is presumably inherited rather than borrowed, and if so serves as a counter-example to his statement, even though the retroflexed stop alternates with a dental in some dialects. 18

Burton-Page’s informant was from the village of Chandrung, west of Ghacok, and I have noted a very few dialectal differences — most interestingly his pre 'eight'. For most Ghacok speakers the form is pxrè, but I have encountered the nonbreathy pronunciation also. The doublet may explain the problem of tonal noncorrespondence with the Written Tibetan bgyad, to which Burton-Page refers (1955:119).

Pignede (1966:18-9) offers a system of transcription utilizing eight vowels, i, e, è, a, à, o, ô, u, with the possibility of vowel length and with nasalized forms of the five basic vowels, i, e, a, o, and u. However I cannot find in his work any words transcribed with the modified vowels, è, à, and ô, nor any utilizing vowel length except loan words from Nepali such as ėyûra, bhûja (1966:89).

Work on the language under the auspices of the Summer Institute of Linguistics at Tribhuvan University, Kathmandu, has included studies on the interrogative, indirect speech, and paragraph structure (J. Glover 1969, 1971a, b), and on the verb 'to be' (W. Glover 1969b), a phonemic summary (W. Glover 1969a), a discussion of the interpretation of semivowels (Hale and W. Glover 1970), an acoustic analysis of Gurung tone (Hinton 1970), translated Gurung texts (W. Glover 1970), a concordance of Gurung texts, with copies at Tribhuvan University, Kathmandu, and the Australian National University, Canberra, (Glover and Glover 1970), a pedagogical guide to Gurung tone (Glover and Glover 1972), and a

18 Pignede (1966:280) transcribed the word thu-gu, linking it with Tibetan thu-bo, spelt thu-wo 'chief, senior, an elder brother' by Das (1951:577). My own check with a Mohoriya speaker revealed conscious alternation between thă·gu and țhă·gu.

1.4 The aim of the present study is to describe the sememic and grammatical structure of Gurung. This is done according to tagmemic theory as developed by Kenneth Pike, Robert Longacre, and others, but drawing also on the work of Joseph Grimes in discourse study. In Chapter 2 I describe the various levels of sememic structure posited for Gurung, and in Chapters 3 to 8 the levels of grammatical structure. The following concepts underlie the theoretical approach.

(1) Language, as part of human behaviour, is composed of emic units - segments of behaviour which are significant within the system to which they belong.

(2) To account for the empirical data of behaviour it is necessary, in describing an emic unit fully, to specify three modes: (a) its contrastive features, which enable repetitions to be recognized as 'emically same [even though] physically different' (Pike 1967:44); (b) its range of variation in observed form; (c) its distribution relative to other units of behaviour.

(3) Language is hierarchically ordered. Thus Pike (1967:96) quotes Zipf (1935:12): 'Every act of behavior may be viewed as a complex of ever smaller acts, and as a component in ever larger complexes of action; we might well be in doubt as to the proper size to select as a unit.' The tagmemic solution to this doubt is to posit levels within a hierarchy and units on each level such that a complex large unit, on a high level of the hierarchy, can be examined at various lower levels in terms of the units on those levels. In the version of tagmemics adopted here three hierarchies

19 Normally the large unit may be accounted for completely in terms of units at any particular lower level, but there are exceptions, where a level of the hierarchy may be skipped. Thus in Rubbish! I don't believe a word of it. the exclamation Rubbish! is not part of any clause in the grammatical hierarchy of English. So, the utterance can not be completely described in terms of units of the clause level.
- phonology, grammar, and sememics - are posited. Semantic content is represented by the sememic hierarchy and phonological form by the phonological hierarchy, but it is held that the interrelationships of meaning and sound cannot be adequately described without reference to syntactic organization, which is represented by the grammatical hierarchy. The three hierarchies show interlocking (that is, 

Pike (1967:515,577-8,598-608) earlier posited a lexical hierarchy consisting of the meanings of the specific morphemes, clusters, words, phrases, clauses, etc., filling slots in the grammatical hierarchy. But he was not particularly happy with this approach and foreshadowed (1967:424n.1) the alternative which has since been developed as the sememic hierarchy, dealing with dramatis personae and situational roles in discourse (Pike 1964b; Forster 1964:44n). Wise (1971[1968]), Pike (1970), and Klammer (1971) called the newly developed hierarchy lexemic, but during a workshop in Nepal in 1971 Pike proposed changing the name from lexemic to sememic. The change emphasized the distinctness of the concept both from the lexical hierarchy he had described earlier, and from Longacre's lexical hierarchy.

Longacre (1964b) viewed as within the lexical hierarchy the lexical collocation-sets and patterns of sets revealed by the discourse analysis techniques of Harris (1952) in studies such as Longacre (1958) and Cowan (1965). Longacre more recently has rejected the notion of a lexical hierarchy and regards lexicon as 'largely non-hierarchical in nature' (1972:xiii). Instead, he has introduced a notion of 'deep grammar', itself comprised of levels.

I view Longacre's deep grammar as essentially the same as Pike's sememic hierarchy. Both terms denote the concept of a logical form underlying the utterance. The concept is similar in aim to the 'logical structure' posited by Frantz (1973) in his introductory treatment of generative semantics. McCawley (1971:285) speaks of 'semantic structure' as 'the level of linguistic structure to which logical rules of inference apply (so that it can appropriately be called 'logical structure')'. Fodor (1970:210) suggests that although we have no certainty that any one system of representing logical form is an adequate semantic representation 'a system of formal logic can serve as a very useful starting point in think about how to represent meaning in linguistic description'.

It appears to me that Pike's trimodal trihierarchical view, as currently understood, does not readily accommodate the collocation phenomena which Longacre has assigned to lexicon.
mutually conditioning) relationships between particular units on particular levels.  

(4) The etic/emic distinction is a crucial concept in
the tagmemic claim that emic units must be recognized in
language (see (1) above), but it is less easily discerned
in the sememic and grammatical hierarchies than in phonology.
Pike's comment (1967:38) that 'Units are different emically
only when they elicit different responses from people acting
within the system' is particularly applicable to phonology.
It is not clear, however, how one measures or observes the
native speaker's response to grammatical constructions
regarded as emically different using a criterion (which I
adopt in general) of two structural differences (Longacre
1964a). In the area of semantics, one finds that a particular
language makes certain distinctions obvious, especially when
they are obligatory in the morphology or syntax, but that
another language does not highlight the same distinctions.
Somewhat tentatively, therefore, I equate 'emic' with
'obvious'.

However, in the process of translation of a message from
the first such language to the second, if one of these
distinctions is crucial it can be expressed, albeit somewhat
more cumbersomely than in the original. Thus Chafe (1970:276)

---

21 Pike (1967:566-80) outlined interlocking relationships
for his original three hierarchies - grammatical, phonological,
and lexical - and Wise (1971:212-7) illustrated mutual
conditioning of grammatical, phonological, and lexemic (here
'sememic') units in Nomatsiguenga. Surface structure
constraints within transformational-generative theory, such as
those described by Perlmutter (1971) for Spanish pronouns,
are viewed in tagmemic theory as grammatical conditioning of
sememic material.

22 Pike (1967:481) apparently equates 'emic' with
'structurally relevant and useful'.

23 Perhaps a rather extreme case arises when there is a
basic difference in world view between two cultures. Margaret
Bain (1972) has argued that European concepts such as
causality, and linearity of time, are quite foreign to the
notes that the Amerindian language Onandaga marks morphologically the distinctions of inclusive/exclusive 1st person in pronouns and dual/plural number in nouns, which distinctions are not obviously made in English. Thus Onandaga appears to have divided the semantic space more finely in these areas than has English. Chafe, however, does not feel that it is proved conclusively that English lacks the semantic distinctions. I would argue that English is capable, indeed, of expressing the distinctions, although they are normally neutralized in English sentences. Thus the pronoun we will be understood in English as respectively inclusive and exclusive of hearer in (1) and (2),

1. We haven't met before, have we?
2. We haven't met you before, have we?

quite independently of any knowledge of the fact that languages like Onandaga (and Gurung) mark the distinction morphologically. Again, dual number is expressible in English, but on phrase level (The two men or both parties) not word level. It does not seem possible to me, therefore, to set an absolute boundary between semantic (analogous to phonetic) and sememic (analogous to phonemic).

Instead, I use the terms semantic and sememic to mark the ends of a spectrum or scale of degrees of 'obviousness'. While it may be true that any human being is in principle capable of making any semantic distinction (any, that is, for which some human language gives syntactic evidence), he actually learns, and uses as a sememic grid, the particular set of semantic distinctions most obviously expressed in the language he speaks. In Chapter 2 I discuss what are the most clearly sememic distinctions in Gurung.

(5) The number of levels of organization within a hierarchy is determined by considerations of heuristic Australian Aboriginal's world view, and that the discrepancy results in a failure of communication between European and Aboriginal. But she says that this failure can be overcome in any given instance, 'given time and goodwill'.

convenience. The levels in the three hierarchies are not identical, but there are typical mappings between a particular level of one hierarchy and levels of another. In the phonological hierarchy in Gurung I described (Glover 1969a) levels of phoneme, syllable, word, and phrase, and I will not give major attention to phonological matters in this study. In the grammatical hierarchy I posit construction levels of word, phrase, clause, sentence, paragraph, and discourse, and these are described in Chapters 3 to 8, beginning with the clause, working down to word, and then from sentence to discourse. In the sememic hierarchy (Chapter 2) I adopt the four levels first posited by Longacre (1972:86) as 'deep structure levels or calculi': increment, role, statement, and response, with role level being described first. Each

24 Grimes (1972b:132), in commenting on Longacre's use of a set of standard levels, ranging from morpheme to discourse, notes that there is 'considerable consistency from one language to another in terms of levels of organization'.

25 Bee (1973a:228) described the clause as 'the syntactic unit closest to the speaker's level of awareness'. Elson & Pickett (1962), Longacre (1964a), and Wise (1971), to name but a few, all start their studies at this level. In earlier drafts of this description I attempted starting with the highest level, discourse, but feel the present order is easiest for the reader.

26 Longacre's terms are actually Increment, Predicate, Statement, and Repartée Calculi. The term 'Calculus' is borrowed from formal logic, where the statement (or proposition, or sentence) calculus 'is limited to the structure of sentences in terms of component sentences', while the much more inclusive predicate calculus adds the concepts of 'terms, predicates, and quantifiers' (Stoll 1961:92). However Longacre (1972:51ff.) has found it necessary to call on these additional concepts (and others such as synonymy) in setting up his 'Statement Calculus' to treat interclausal relations. He then proposes restricting the 'Predicate Calculus' to the system of participant relationships expressed typically in clauses. Because of this rather radical alteration to the content of the logicians' terms, I do not follow Longacre in using 'calculus' but return to the more usual tagmemic term 'level', and rename his 'Predicate Calculus' role level. I rename his 'Repartée' as 'response' purely as a preference for English, rather than French, terms.
level is defined by the particular kind of relationship obtaining between units at that level.

In discussing the four levels of the semantic hierarchy in this chapter I utilize a conception of semantic structure as comprised of propositions, each consisting of a predicate with zero or more arguments. The types of relationship operative at each level, and which thus define the level, are participant roles at role level (Sec. 2.3), attribution of increment level (Sec. 2.5), logical connection of propositions at statement level (Sec. 2.3), and the interaction of stimulus and response at response level (Sec. 1.4).

2.7 Role level. The roles express the small number of apparently universal ways in which the participants in an action or state relate as arguments to the lexical predicate expressing the action or state. "Lexical" predicates, in semantic structure, 'correspond more or less to the meanings of words' (Uhrig 1972:120), and characteristically take roles as arguments. Thus break is a lexical predicate in English with the roles Agent, Patient, and Instrument forming one of its possible role sets, as in A fireman breaks the window with an ax. Lexical predicates can in principle be shown in the lexicon with basic role set(s).

A number of linguists have made lists of the roles. The best known work is probably Fillmore's discussion (1968) of "cases". Kay (1973) described "case constellations" in an early psycholinguistic study of the concept, and Varley and Bernard (1979) used the notion, under the name of "situational role".

This use of the term 'predicate' must not be confused with the clause level, grammatical role typically filled by a verb. A semantic predicate relates certain entities, called its arguments, in such a way as to result in a proposition. Uhrig (1972:120) allows for more than one predicate in a proposition, but I prefer a formulation which allows only a single predicate, to which all arguments relate.
In discussing the four levels of the sememic hierarchy in this chapter I utilize a conception of sememic structure as comprised of propositions, each consisting of a predicate with zero or more arguments. The types of relationship operative at each level, and which thus define the level, are participant roles at role level (Sec. 2.1), attribution at increment level (Sec. 2.2), logical connection of propositions at statement level (Sec. 2.3), and the interaction of stimulus and response at response level (Sec. 2.4).

2.1 Role level. The roles express the small number of apparently universal ways in which the participants in an action or state relate as arguments to the lexical predicate expressing the action or state. Lexical predicates, in sememic structure, 'correspond more or less to the meanings of words' (Grimes 1972b:133), and characteristically take roles as arguments. Thus break is a lexical predicate in English with the roles Agent, Patient, and Instrument forming one of its possible role sets, as in A fireman broke the window with an axe. Lexical predicates can in principle be shown in the lexicon with their role set(s).

A number of linguists have made lists of the roles. The best known work is probably Fillmore's discussion (1968) of 'cases'. Kerr (1965) described 'case constellations' in an early tagmemic study of the concept, and Forster and Barnard (1968) used the notion, under the name of 'situational role',...

---

1This use of the term 'predicate' must not be confused with the clause level grammatical slot typically filled by a verb. A semantic predicate relates certain entities, called its arguments, in such a way as to result in a proposition. Grimes (1972b:225) allows for more than one predicate in a proposition, but I prefer a formulation which allows only a single predicate, to which all arguments relate.
in classifying Dibabawon verbs. More recently Langendoen (1970), Platt (1971), Frantz (1971), and Grimes (1972b) have proposed lists. Grimes notes that all the lists so far given differ somewhat and claims that continuing study of role systems is producing 'a convergence in the findings of different scholars', and that the set of role relationships is 'quite likely a property of all languages' (1972b:145).

The roles are an attempt to represent the underlying semantic relationships in a proposition. To emphasize the distinctness of the concept from that of surface structure markings I reserve the term 'role' for sememic relationships, and the term 'case' for grammatical markings. In general, distinct roles are posited where grammatical structures show contrast (in overt realization or in transformational potential) of two putative roles, or where two phrases with the same grammatical marking occur in the one clause. Thus Goal, in (la), and Source, in (lb), are distinguished by a contrast of grammatical form (-ri versus -ule) correlated with the situational difference.

1a. a·ma· pukʰru·ri xya·-f.
   mother Pokhara-to go-PA
   G

   Mother went to Pokhara.

2 Gurung examples are cited in this study with interlinear morpheme-by-morpheme gloss. Upper case letters in the gloss refer to abbreviations included in the list on p. x. Space corresponds to word boundary, hyphen to morpheme boundary. Where a single Gurung morpheme requires two English words as gloss they are linked by an underline. Where a Gurung morpheme is broken by word space a single English gloss is given and the extended equivalence of the gloss is indicated by the spacing. Both these situations are illustrated in the following extract from (2b):

   ca·f bift ná·ni·d
   eat-CJ ET_daughter-ER

Relevant structural constituents are marked below the morpheme gloss. A sentence gloss is given below the examples, and any feature necessary in the English but omitted from the actual Gurung example, such as anaphorically deleted pronouns, is placed in parentheses, as in (4).
b. a·ma· pukʰrú-ulé xya·-ʃ.  
mother Pokhara-from go-PA  

S
Mother went from Pokhara.

As an example of differing transformational potential distinguishing roles, the familiar do so substitution test (Fillmore 1968:31) has a Gurung counterpart which distinguishes Agent, in (2), from Experiencer, in (3), in that (3b) is unacceptable.

2a. surje-d kaŋ ca-ʃ.  
Surje-ER rice eat-PA  
A
Surje ate rice.

b. surje-d kaŋ ca-ʃ biri ná·ni-d cha·n la-ʃ.  
Surje-ER rice eat-CJ ET_daughter thus do-PA  
A A  

Surje ate rice, and Eldest Daughter did so (too).

3a. surje-d dxůy mró-ʃ.  
Surje-ER tree see-PA  
X
Surje saw a tree.

b. *surje-d dxůy mró-ʃ biri ná·ni-d cha·n la-ʃ.  
Surje-ER tree see-CJ ET_daughter thus do-PA

And Agent and Instrument are distinguished in that both roles, with identical marking -d 'ergative', occur in (4).

4. ŋa-d ca-ʃal yo-d plə·ʃ.  
me-ER him-DAT hand-ER strike-PA  
A P I
I struck him with (my) hand.

I adopt Grimes' description of roles and the following definitions are extracted from his discussion (1972b:146-62), except where I have explicitly noted a departure.

AGENT (A) marks the instigator of the action, the one who performs it. Typically this implies animateness, and animateness is perhaps imputed by the role to inanimate entities as in personifications: Fortune (A) smiled on her.

INSTRUMENT (I) represents something that is used inanimately to perform an action, as in He (A) cleared the yard with a rake (I).
NONINSTIGATIVE CAUSE (C) asserts a causal relation but denies both animateness and intent, and so is not coupled with Agent as is Instrument. Thus malaria (C) killed the girl and the girl died of malaria (C), where malaria is not being personified.

In Gurung, these three roles are normally realized identically with the ergative suffix -d. Agent and Instrument sometimes occur in the same clause, as in (4) above, and so need to be distinguished. Noninstigative cause appears distinguishable from Agent in that it excludes an Instrument, and also in that there is generally a close paraphrase with the source suffix -ule 'from', as in (5b).

5a. ggyu-d tagara bo-ya'-i.
river-ER gatepost take-COM-PA
C
P
The river carried away the gatepost.

b. ggyu-ulé tagara bo-ya'-i.
river-from gatepost take-COM-PA
C
P
The river carried away the gatepost.

EXPERIENCER (X) is the role appropriate for perception and psychological involvement, as in I (X) think it's going to rain, or we (X) have heard a joyful sound. Grimes allows more than one role to be attached to a participant, as in I (AX) will think it over. Experiencer is distinguished from Agent (except when the roles are combined as in the last example), by the intent which is ascribed to Agent but not to Experiencer. In Gurung, as in English, this can be checked by the question cá-d tó la-’ī? 'What did he do?'. For an Agent the answer is supplied by the statement questioned, but for an Experiencer the answer is tó-ī ax-ló '(He) did nothing'.

PATIENT (P) tells who or what is affected by an action, whether as a change of state or a movement in space, as in

3 Grimes (1972b:159) regarded the river carried away my hat as ambiguous as to the role of the river, Agent (personified) or Noninstigative cause (inanimate). I do not sense any such ambiguity in the Gurung example (5a).
the snowflake (P) fell, or the ice (P) melted.

NEUTRAL (N) is the role of 'an entity which is in no way affected by the action or state' (Platt 1971:78), as in John (AX) listened to the music (N). In Gurung (and English) Patient and Neutral are distinguished by the question cá-lai tó ta-í? 'What happened to it?'. For a Patient the answer is supplied by the verb of the statement questioned - as it fell in the example the snowflake (P) fell - but if the participant's role is Neutral the answer to the test question is tó-í ax-tó 'Nothing happened'.

GOAL (G) tells where an action is headed or where it ends up, as in the pusher (A) sold the junkie (G) some heroin (P), and the junkie (AG) bought some heroin (P) from the pusher.

In Gurung, as in English, the grammatical marking for a clause signalling purpose is often identical to the marking of the Goal, -r 'to':

6. ḡe ḡe: jí temporarily a-bá-r bxa-ra-tá-r xyá:-m.
   me report do-GE-to India-to go-NP

I am going to India to report for duty.

However I regard the relation as belonging to the statement level of semantic structure (Sec. 2.33).

SOURCE (S) tells where something that moves starts its motion from, as in we went to the lake (G) from the hotel (S),

4Grimes does not make this distinction a basis for separate roles. He extends the definition of Patient to include 'anything that is in a particular state' (1972b:150). He has suggested (1973) that the role of Patient is the same whether in a dynamic proposition, describing a process, or a static one, describing a state.

5Platt (1971:79) includes 'purpose of action or state' in his set of Grammatical Meanings, but Grimes regards purpose in English as a rhetorical predicate (linking propositions) and does not include it in his set of roles. However he notes (1972b:157) that John Austing posits a Telic role for Omie (Papua New Guinea), and that there is evidence for its existence in English sentences like he called to his wife (G) for coffee (Te). He has more recently suggested (1973:7) that coffee may be subsumed under Referent, an extension of the role of Range.
or the pusher (S) in the examples above under Goal. 6

RANGE (R) refers to the area or field in which an action is carried out. It is not affected by the action, so contrasting with Patient, and contrasts with the clause peripheral setting (called 'outer locative' by Fillmore (1968:26n.) and Platt (1971:29ff.)), in that it is essential to the meaning of the predicate to which it is an adjunct. In many cases, as in they crossed the street (RN), Range may be indistinguishable from Neutral. 7

BENEFACTIVE (B) identifies someone or something on whom an action has a secondary effect, either for good or ill. In Gurung, there is not, to my knowledge, any syntactic marking of Benefactive when it is combined with another role, as in Grimes' example a thief (AG) stole his things (P) from him (BS), so it is of dubious value to posit the role in such cases. 8 However the role is necessary in Gurung in cases where no other role is present. Benefactive is then realized by a phrase with the postposition -e lxa·gi·ri 'for the sake of', as in (7).

6Hope (1972:27), who adopts the definitions of Fillmore (1968), regards Source as being included in Locative as he lists the two Lisu postpositions wa 'to' and tsú 'from' as both associated with Locative. In 1970 Fillmore enlarged his list of cases to ten (Cook 1971b:12), including three spatial cases: Goal (to), Source (from), and Locative (at), which last Grimes has called Range.

7Grimes (1972b:159) says: 'The most characteristic mark that distinguishes Range from Patient is that while the Patient typically is changed in form or position, Range is not affected in any parallel way.' But, as noted above (note 4), Grimes extends the definition of Patient to include things not changed, but existing in a state. I have not adopted this extension, but have followed Platt in positing a separate Neutral role.

8Another case of combination with a second role arises from Platt's argument (1971:48-9) that Benefactive should include alienable possession, as in George gave Mary a book. In this example, Mary would have the roles of both Goal and Benefactive.
7. si-báe mxí-e lxa·gi-ri bxoj banidí-i.
    die-AJ person-of sake-in feast make-PA

    (They) made a feast for the dead person's sake.

    FACTITIVE (F) is the relation of an action to its result, as in the glass (P) shattered into a thousand pieces (F). This includes expressions of extent when resulting from a process:

8. cá-maŋ pukhrú-r ñxa-gáŋ tí-í.
    that-PL Pokhara-in five-day stay-PA

    They stayed in Pokhara five days.

2.2 The increment level was proposed by Longacre (1972:81) as the domain of operation of devices for adding various modifications or qualifications to terms of a predication. I will confine attention to argument terms. I regard modifications (such as of quality, possession, number) as belonging to the increment level when they are used to identify or qualify a term of predication rather than being directly asserted as predicates themselves. Thus I regard the relation of big to man in (9) as an increment of size, but in (10) big is a predicate with man standing in the Neutral role to it.

9. the-báe mxí dxí-í kʰó-í.
    big-AJ person house-in enter-PA
    A/ The big man entered a/the house. ⁹

10. dxí-í kʰó-báe mxí the-b mu.
    house-in enter-AJ person big-GE is
    A/ The man who entered a/the house is big.

⁹ Gurung sentences do not obligatorily distinguish the definiteness or indefiniteness of noun phrases, but may make definiteness explicit by a deictic such as cū 'this', or indefiniteness explicit by the numeral gxrí 'one'. Hence the alternative articles given in the English glosses of (9, 10, 9', 10').

¹⁰ The full form of the adjective in predicate position is the-bá-. Elision of a final -a before a consonant-initial word is common, but not invariable.
Increment level relations involve two terms, the head and the modifier, and may be related to predications with a predicate corresponding to the modifier of the increment relation, and one argument corresponding to the head. Thus the incremented terms of (9) and (10), that is, the initial noun phrase in each case, relate respectively to (9') and (10'):

9'. cú mx́i the-b mu. 
this person big-GE is N
This man is big (or the big one).

10'. cú mx́i dx́-r khọ-ba. 
this person house-in enter-GE A G
This man is one (or the one) who entered the house.

I therefore see increment level relations as 'downgraded' versions of the corresponding predications - 'downgraded', that is, in the sense proposed by Leech (1969:26) to describe semantic embedding of a predication within a term as a modifier in that term.

The increment level is treated as separate from the role level, though, in order to account for the fact that in a clause with semantically complex terms, only one of several propositions is directly asserted, and others are reduced in emphasis, becoming assumptions, or presuppositions, underlying the assertion. If no distinction of levels were made we would be unable to distinguish (9) and (10) in sememic structure. Thus, in the notation of symbolic logic (as set out in, for example, Thomason 1970), the logical structure of both (9) and (10) could be represented by (11).  

11. (�x)(Px ∨ Qx ∨ Rx)

where P represents '____ is a man', Q represents '____ is big', and R represents '____ entered the house', and  is

---

11. Thomason does not treat the unique existential quantifier L. James McCawley discussed its use to represent the definite article in his introductory course on logic at the Australian National University in the winter of 1973.
Sec. 2.2

the unique existential quantifier.

That is, (11) can be read as 'there exists a unique x such that x is a man, x is big, and x entered the house'. A tree diagram equivalent to (11), but ignoring the quantifier, is (11")\textsuperscript{12}.

11". PROP ---PRED---and
PROP ---PRED---man
PROP ---N---x
PROP ---PRED---big
PROP ---N---x
PROP ---PRED---enter
PROP ---A---x
PROP ---G---house

\textsuperscript{12}In drawing tree diagrams to represent semantic structure I follow Frantz (1973) in showing propositions as consisting of a predicate with a number of arguments. Where the arguments are in a role relation to the predicates the role is treated as a category symbol in the tree, but rhetorical predicates, such as the conjunction 'and' in (11"), do not have arguments related to them in role relationships (Grimes 1972b:251), although they may have other relationships linking arguments to the predicate. (See, for example, the PROBLEM-SOLVING predicate in Sec. 2.4.) Following Frantz (1971) and Grimes (1972b) I use 'tipped' trees in place of the more common 'north-oriented' tree. In the north-oriented format (11") would be drawn:

One advantage of the tipped tree (in which 'uppermost' corresponds to 'leftmost' in the north-oriented tree) is that within a proposition the predicate stands out, being on the same line as the PROP node.
Symbolic logic of this type does not represent the difference in emphasis between (9) and (10). Something of this difference can be represented by tree diagrams showing the assumed propositions (the presuppositions) as subordinate to the occurrence in the main proposition (the assertion) of the referential index for the term to which the presuppositions relate. (9) and (10) could be diagrammed then as (9") and (10") respectively.

9": PROP ——— PRED ——— enter
    G ——— house
    A ——— x

PROP ——— PRED ——— and
PROP ——— PRED ——— man
    N ——— x
PROP ——— PRED ——— big
    N ——— x

The big man entered the house.

10": PROP ——— PRED ——— big
    N ——— x

PROP ——— PRED ——— and
PROP ——— PRED ——— man
    N ——— x
PROP ——— PRED ——— enter
    A ——— x
PROP ——— PRED ——— house

The man who entered the house is big.

The speaker clearly makes a decision as to which propositions he will treat as presuppositions and which he will select for assertion. These decisions relate to the speaker's point of departure, or viewpoint, and to his assumptions as to what the hearer already knows - the areas...
that Grimes (1972b) has called respectively 'staging' and 'cohesion'. Not a great deal is understood as to how decisions in the areas of staging and cohesion interact with content structures like (11) to produce outputs such as (9) and (10). The details of this interaction are beyond the scope of this study, but I posit the increment level as an intermediate one, such that propositions which have been reduced to presuppositions are represented as incremented terms in the assertion.

Another motivation for establishing the increment level as distinct from the role level is that increment level clusters typically map onto word and phrase levels of the grammatical hierarchy. In Gurung, as in English, assertions are normally made by clause level structures, and presuppositions expressed by phrase level constructions, including the use of restrictive relative clauses as phrase level modifiers (Sec. 4.11).

The general association of the relation of modification with word and phrase level structures suggested to Longacre (1972:85) an affixing notation for increment level relations,

13 This statement of course needs qualification if it is to encompass the effect of contrastive intonation. Thus, if in (9) big is made a centre of marked stress, which I represent using upper case, as in (a),

a. The BIG man entered the house.

the presuppositions are (i) that someone is big, and (ii) that someone else, who is not big, entered the house (or that it is not known who entered the house). The assertion is that, contrary to the second presupposition, it was the BIG man, not the small one, who entered the house. Thus marked stress adds presuppositions to a statement, often in order to contradict them in the assertion.

Still more complicated patterns of presupposition and assertion arise when more than one centre of marked stress is introduced:

b. The BIG man ENTERED the HOUSE.

But I will not pursue the problems associated with this type of contrastive intonation.

Assertion and presupposition are also reflected in surface structure in semantically complex lexical items, as shown in Fillmore's treatment (1971) of verbs of judging such blame and criticize.
and I adopt this convention also. The types of modification which are evident in Gurung in the arguments of propositions are qualification (q), possession (p), and number (n). \[14\] (12) illustrates the use of the notation in interlinear analysis of examples, but I will not employ the affixes unless focusing on the increment level structure.

12. \[\text{ŋé-} \ a \ · \text{ma-} \ d \ \text{mx}^\text{i} \ \text{plx}^\text{f-} \ · \text{la}^\text{i} \ \text{xrqsa-} \ d \ \text{†xu-} \ \text{báe} \ \text{me-of} \ \text{mother-ER} \ \text{person} \ \text{four-DAT} \ \text{self-ER} \ \text{sew-AJ} \ \text{p-A} \ \text{n-G} \ \text{q-P} \ \text{kwé} \ \text{pl-} \ \text{cloth} \ \text{give-PA} \ \text{PRED}

My mother gave the four people the clothes she had sewn herself.

I have distinguished the three relations because of their different relevance to describing participants in a situation. Qualification notes attributes of a participant which help identify it, and is typically expressed by adjectives or Relative Clauses, such as \text{xrqsa-}d \ \text{†xu-} \ \text{báe} ' (which) she had sewn herself ' in (12). Possession also helps identify a participant, but in the special way of stating a relation to another one or more participants, as \text{ŋé-} \ 'my' in (12). Number specifies the quantity involved, only indirectly contributing to identification, and is typically expressed by numerals (\text{plx}^\text{f} in (12)), plural suffixes, or such adjectives as \text{kwé} 'some', \text{ta·n} 'all', and \text{lxé} 'many'.

2.3 The statement level describes the interrelations of propositions, including conjunction, disjunction, implication, paraphrase, and temporal connection. Such relations may be represented in the notation of the predicate calculus of

\[14\] Wise (1971:121) assigns these relations to the lexemic phrase level in her description of Nomatsiguenga.
symbolic logic, with the following symbols:  

- \(a, b, \ldots, p\) Terms of predications, written to the right of the predicate symbol.  
- \(x\) Variable in one term of a prediction.  
- \(P, Q, R, S\) Predicates. When no terms are specified, the predicate symbol stands for the whole predication.  
- \(\neg P\) The negation of \(P\), which may itself be either positive or negative.  
- \(\overline{P}\) A predicate containing a negative in the verb phrase. The use of the symbol implies that the predicate \(P\) itself does not contain a negative in the verb phrase.  
- \(a', P', a'', P''\) Synonyms or situational equivalents of \(a, P\).  
- \(a', P', a'' P''\) Antonyms or situational opposites of \(a, P\).  
- \(P \circ Q\) \(P\) implies \(Q\) (implication).  
- \(P \land Q\) Both \(P\) and \(Q\) (conjunction).  
- \(P \not\land Q\) Either \(P\) or \(Q\), but not both (exclusive disjunction).  
- \((x)Px\) Universally quantified variable: 'For all \(x\), \(Px\).'  
- \((\exists x)Px\) Existentially quantified variable: 'There exists an \(x\) such that \(Px\).'  
- \((X)\) Presupposition parentheses - denote that the enclosed expression, being at least a predication, is a presupposition underlying the remainder of the expression.  
- [X] Constituency brackets - square brackets signal constituent structure within an expression.  
- \(P\) An event involved in temporal succession.  
- \(P\) An activity or state involved in temporal succession.  
- \(P\) An event involved in temporal overlap.  
- \(P \land Q\) An activity or state involved in temporal overlap.

The specification of statement level relations and definition of symbols are based largely on the general
Sec. 2.3

A relatively more generic predicate (than sP).

An intended predicate.

A relatively more specific predicate (than gP).

A quotative predicate, denoting reported speech in the conjoined predication.

2.3.1 Conjunction. In the relation of conjunction the component predications are simply linked together to make a joint assertion. Two types of conjunction in Gurung are (1) general collection, and (2) partitive contrast, distinguished by constraints on the composition of the component predications.

(1) General collection is symbolized as

\[ P \land Q \land \ldots \land S \]

In natural language, though not in formal logic, propositions are conjoinable only when they are understood as expressing particular instances of a general assertion. Thus (14) gives details supporting the general assertion that 'Living in the city has many advantages'.

14. bele lâ-bae sâe ca-l yq-mû, swa-lle ch'yâ-bâe
very tasty-AJ thing eat-IN AVL-NP extremely good-AJ

P

kwâ khi-l yq-mû, ta·n khîxyo bâsa-rî xya·-lå yq-mû. cloth wear-IN AVL-NP all place bus-in go-IN AVL-NP

R

(One) gets to eat very nice food, (one) gets to wear extremely good clothes, (one) can go everywhere by bus.

(2) Partitive contrast is a special case of conjunction which describes a situation by expressing contrasting features

The examples cited so far illustrate conjunction, taxonomy given by Longacre (1972:52-90), although I have adopted some notational conventions from Thomason (1970).

16 The term 'collection' is used by Grimes (1972b:264).

17 I am indebted to James McCawley for bringing this constraint on conjoining to my attention, in his seminars at ANU in the (southern) winter of 1973. Longacre expresses a constraint in terms of predications needing to belong to the same semantic domain, and notes that an ad hoc domain may be defined for this purpose by a specific discourse (1972:90).
of different aspects of the situation. The component predications partition different conceptual spaces, correlating part with part. (15) gives two alternative formulations of partitive contrast:

15a. P_a \wedge P_{bn} \wedge \ldots \wedge P_{dp}

b. P_a \wedge Q_b \wedge \ldots \wedge S_d

where a, b, \ldots d and m, n, \ldots p are sets of terms drawn from different conceptual spaces, and P, Q, \ldots S a set of predicures, with the members of each set being individually distinct in reference.

(15a) represents the case where the same predicate is used, as in the English example (16) (where English anaphorically deletes the repeated verb):

16. I eat porridge for breakfast, sandwiches for lunch, and pie for dinner.

(15b) represents cases such as the Gurung example (17), where the predicates are different (but conjoinable in the sense discussed above in that they all describe the results of a drunken feast), and the pronouns kwí ... kwí ... kwí ...

'some ... some ... some ...' denote various sets of people in the village.

17. kwí pā' nxí-i biríg gxyâ' kʰa·'gu ró-my, kwí some wine intoxicate-CJ road about lie-NP some Pa

rwí-my, kwí kʰlṣyí ky phir-na ró-ri-my. vomit-NP some faeces urine upon-EM lie-stay-NP Rc

Some, being intoxicated with wine, are lying around the roads, some are vomiting, some stay lying even on faeces and urine.

The examples cited so far illustrate conjunction manifested at the grammatical level of sentence. At the phrase level, Co-ordinate Phrases are a manifestation of the sememic relation of conjunction: 18

---

18 I am conscious of the problems associated with a mechanism of conjunction reduction, evident in deriving sentences such as (18) and the related 'He and his secretary
18. cá neró khā-e sajib [khā-lá].

    that and self-of secretary come-PLUP

P ∧ Q

He and his secretary [had come].

At discourse level, the relation of conjunction may be seen as that connecting, for example, POINTS in a HORTATORY DISCOURSE. A conveniently brief example is provided by a speech in the fable of the Horse Owner and the Oil Press Owner, given here as (19) (a full translation of the fable, of which this extract comes in sentences 64-67, is given in Sec. 2.4).

19. (POINT 1) āx-ŋx să-in gxrī tī-d. cyugū thīrī

    not-be moment one stay-IM little

P

tq' matter only

(POINT 2) jxa'-lé, cú-r āx-khā-rī-d.

    thus-from this-to not-come-CN-IM

xrego-lé-n tq' la-b-da.

distant-from-EM matter do-GE-EM

(POINT 1) No! Stay a moment. It's only a small matter.

(POINT 2) Also, don't come here. We'll consult from a distance.

The sememic relation of conjunction is, then, mapped onto different grammatical levels, with different realizations of the link at the various levels: phrasal conjunction (such as neró 'and') at phrase level, parataxis at sentence level, had both come', 'He and his secretary had come together', 'He and his secretary had come separately', and 'He had come with his secretary'. But the co-ordinate phrase is obviously a manifestation of the relation of conjunction, regardless of whether one derives (18) from the two propositions 'he had come' and 'his secretary had come' by conjunction reduction, or derives the co-ordinate phrase directly as a conjunction ('collection') of terms.

19. See p. x for the use of upper case in symbols to signal grammatical levels.
and paragraph introducer (jxa·l'é 'then; also') at discourse level.

2.32 Disjunction. The relation of exclusive disjunction expresses the choice of one and only one from the set of arguments:

20. \[ P \not\equiv Q \not\equiv \ldots \not\equiv S \]

In Gurung exclusive disjunction is expressed at sentence level by the conjunctions u 'or' and k' \ldots k' \ldots 'either ... or ...', and at phrase level by nonfinal intonation between terms of an Alternative Phrase (sec.4.12):

21. \text{palá palá-bae kʰ|xyo-r-na u, a·rkó kʰ|xyo-r before before-AJ place-in-EM or other place-to P sa·rdí-nyú? move-STAT (Are they) in the same place as before, or have (they) moved to another place?}

22. \text{phô-lo, cxe-lxo, ba·roqâ lxo nxqri kʰab deer-year bird-year twelve year within which P Q R lxo-ne pŕ kxr-i-my, [cá lxo-r-na cxú-m.] year-with match-NP that year-in-EM perform-NP The deer year, the bird year, (or) whichever year in the twelve years (it) matches with, [that is the year (they) perform (the ceremony).]}

2.33 Implication. There are several types of implicational relations, depending on whether the relation is asserted (in Condition Sentences) or presupposed but denied (in Concession Sentences), and on whether the premiss is hypothetical, factual, or contrafactual. In Gurung Concession Sentences there is also a distinction between a definite premiss and an indefinite (or universally quantified) premiss. The resulting matrix of relations is shown in Fig. 10, where the numbers in the body of the matrix refer to the numbered paragraphs in this subsection discussion and exemplifying each type.
(1) The relation of Condition with Hypothetical Premiss asserts an implicational link between a premiss and an outcome, independent of the factual status of either proposition. It is represented simply as (23), and is exemplified in (24).

23. \( P 
\rightarrow Q \)

where \( P \) is the premiss and \( Q \) the outcome.

24. \( \text{ciniyà· mìxa a·sara pà·c gate ruį·dů biyà· chiniya rice Asar five day plant-if P a·soja pacìs gate jare mį·m. Asoj 25 day about ripen-NP Q } \)

If (one) transplants chiniya rice on 5 Asar (it) ripens about 25 Asoj.

(2) Concession relations express the idea of frustration of an expectancy chain, which may be symbolized as (25), for the case of Concession with Hypothetical, Definite Premiss.

25. \( (P \circ Q) \land R \land [R \circ \sim(P \circ Q)] \land \sim Q \land S \)

where \( P \) is the premiss, from which one would presuppose an outcome \( Q \), but in fact a blocking circumstance \( R \) frustrates the expected outcome (and produces \( \sim Q \)), and a surrogate outcome \( S \) is the result.\(^{20}\)

---

\(^{20}\) Longacre (1972:69) represents the relation as
An example of Concession with Hypothetical, Definite Premiss is (26), where \( P \) is 'a woman marries', \( Q \) is 'a woman does not inherit', \( R \) is 'a woman is an only child', and \( S \) is 'a woman inherits'.

26. biya· la-se qsa yq-m'y. 
wedding do-even_if inheritance AVL-NP 
P S
[Normally a woman does not inherit if she marries, 
but] [since in this case the particular woman is an 
only child] even if (she) marries (she) receives the 
inheritance.

(3) Concession relations may have a universal quantifier in the premiss, producing a premiss which is indefinite for the value of some term, represented in (27) by the variable \( x \).

27. \((\neg (x) [P x \circ \neg Q]) \land R \land (R \circ (x) [P x \circ \neg Q]) \land \neg Q \land S\) 
The presupposition may be formulated, with exact semantic equivalence, using the existential quantifier:

\( (3x) [P x \circ Q] 'For some \( x \), \( P x \) implies \( Q \)'.

This is closer to the normal English construction, as shown in the sentence gloss for (28): 'Normally one expects to have to travel some places on foot'. I have employed the formulation using a negative with the universal quantifier because it is a closer formal equivalent to the Gurung phrasing. In (28) the indefinite term in the premiss is the Goal khan' 'where' of the predicate xyá'-'go', \( P \) is 'you go to \( x \)', \( Q \) is 'you have to walk', \( R \) is 'the bus service in the city is good', and \( S \) 'you can go by bus'.

(note 20, cont'd):

\((P \circ Q) \land P \land R \land \neg Q \land S\) 
I have omitted the term \( P \), because in this case the premiss is hypothetical, and I have added the constituent \([R \circ \neg (P \circ Q)]\) to make explicit the blocking function of \( R \): '\( R \) implies the falsity of \([P \circ Q]\)'. In Gurung texts the blocking circumstance and the surrogate outcome are not usually explicit in the sentence, although they may be in respectively preceding and following sentences. In the glosses of examples in this section I show in square brackets the presupposition and other implicit elements of the expectancy chain.
28. \( \text{khanf xya'-ná bile ya· base-rí xyá'-l yq-mý.} \)
where go-even_if also bus-in go-IN AVL-NP
(x)Px

[Normally one expects to have to travel some places, on foot, but] [because the bus service in the city is good,] wherever (you) go, (you) can go by bus.

(4) The second row of the matrix in Fig. 10 differs from the first in that the premiss \( P \) is asserted as being factual. The relation of Condition with Factual Premiss is what Longacre (1972:73) has called Efficient Cause, and may be represented as (29),\(^{21}\) as exemplified by (30).

29. \( P \land Q \land [P \supset Q] \)

30. \( \text{mágl ñxí sae-I txu-seró lxé k'hárja ta-bá'•} \)
buffalo two kill-IN NEC-since much expense be-GE

Since (one) must kill two buffalo, much expense is involved.

The relation of Final Cause (purpose) perhaps also belongs in the same cell of the matrix - Condition with Factual Premiss. The difference from Efficient Cause is that the outcome \( Q \) is not stated as factual, but rather the intention that \( Q \) come to pass is asserted (and symbolized as \( pQ \)). I therefore represent Final Cause as (31),\(^{21}\) of which (32) is an example.

31. \( P \land pQ \land [P \supset pQ] \)

32. \( \text{pailá rajistári la-bá'•, mxuí gxrí mu-yé' ta-méla.} \)
before register do-GE rupee one be-if OK-PH

Before, in order to register (a letter), if there was a rupee's worth (of stamps), it was sufficient.

\(^{21}\)Longacre's representation of Efficient and Final Cause differs somewhat from (29) and (31) respectively. He omits the term \( Q \) from Efficient Cause, but I include it because I feel the sentence explicitly asserts the factual nature of the outcome as well as of the premiss. Longacre's representation of Final Cause is (1972:73)

\( P \land [P \supset pQ] \)

but I feel that the sentences assert both the intentionary predicate \( pQ \) and the implicational relation \([P \supset Q]\).
(5) The relation of Concession with Factual, Definite Premiss is symbolized in (33) and exemplified in (34).

33. \( (P \land Q) \land R \land \neg R \land \neg (P \land Q) \land \neg Q \land S \land P \)

34. biramibītanā bile cvq-d mrq-d no sickness happen-even_tho YT_son-ER field-in weed S

[Normally, people don't work if they're sick, but]
[because of the pressure of work in that month], even though (he) was sick, Youngest Son had been weeding in the fields.

(6) Similarly, the relation of Concession with Factual Indefinite Premiss may be represented in (35):

35. \( \neg (x) [P_{x} \land \neg Q] \land R \land [R \land (x) [P_{x} \land \neg Q]] \land \neg Q \land S \land (x)P_{x} \)

In (36) \( P \) is 'one does \( x \)', \( Q \) is 'one can resolve a dispute', \( R \) is 'their positions were incompatible', and \( S \) is 'their words came to nothing'.

36. khasila-se camaq khāb-né mābá-e tā. how do-even_tho that-PL O_man-with O_woman-of word (x)P_{x} S
tōi ax-ta. what not-happen
[Normally, if one tries everything one can resolve a dispute, but] [because their positions were incompatible], even though (they) tried everything, the old man and the old woman's words came to nothing.\(^{22}\)

(7) The third row of the matrix in Fig. 10 differs from

\(^{22}\) (36) is ambiguous as it stands between the Factual and Hypothetical subtypes of the Concession relation, precisely because the morphological contrast between 'past tense' (which gives a Factual subtype) and 'nonpast tense' (which gives a Hypothetical subtype) is neutralized in the negative. In both tenses the verb suffix is zero. But the context in which (36) occurs in a narrative discourse in the corpus eliminates the ambiguity, since the narrative is in past time. In context, then, the zero suffix signals the Factual subtype.
the first in that the premiss P is asserted as being
contrafactual, and so a term ~P is added. The relation of
Condition with Contrafactual Premiss may be represented as
(37), and is exemplified in (38). 23

37. [P ⊃ Q] ∧ ~P

38. mxaina-r ñer sae pj-ya' ca-b negó kwè kʰi-bá
month-in 1.5 HUND give-if eat-GE with cloth wear-GE
P
xyu-mála.
suffice-UR

If (he) had given (me) 150 (rupees) a month, (it)
would have been sufficient for food and clothing,
[but he didn't give me Rs. 150 a month].

(8) The relation of Concession with Contrafactual,
Definite Premiss is symbolized in (39) and exemplified in (40).

39. (P ⊃ Q) ∧ R ∧ [R ⊃ [P ⊃ Q]] ∧ ~Q ∧ S ∧ ~P

40. cá din, dasmi bā-1 birlf, cxæó ax-kʰyá'-na bile
that day Dasmi say-CJ tika not-apply-even-if
P
ya.', pri-mála.
also taboo-UR
S

[One might expect that if you don't wear a tika you
are not affected by the taboo, but] [because the taboo
is strict in our area] even if (you) had not worn a
tika on that day called Dasmi, (you) would still be
bound by the taboo, [and you wore a tika anyway].

(9) The relation of Concession with Contrafactual,
Indefinite Premiss is symbolized in (41) and exemplified in
(42), which is minimally contrastive with (36) above in
employing the verb suffix -mala 'unreal'.

41. (¬(x)[Px ⊃ ~Q]) ∧ R ∧ [R ⊃ (x)[Px ⊃ ~Q]] ∧ ~Q ∧ S ∧
   ¬(x)Px

---

23 I believe Longacre (1972:66) is mistaken in formulating
Condition with a Contrafactual Premiss as

~P ∧ [¬P ⊃ ~Q]

(38) does not assert, or deny, the truth of 'If he had not
given me Rs. 150 a month, I would not have had sufficient
for food and clothing'.
[Normally, if one tries everything one can resolve a dispute, but] [because their positions were incompatible] even if (they) had tried everything the old man and the old woman's words would have come to nothing, [and they did not try everything anyway].

Implication relations are most frequently encountered at the level of sentence in the grammatical hierarchy, it seems, as the above examples illustrate. But at paragraph level the REASON and RESULT tagmemes of EXPLANATORY and HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS are generally linked to the TEXT (or EXHORTATION in HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS) by an implicational relation. Thus (43) is a HORTATORY PARAGRAPH with tagmemes EXHORTATION, REINFORCEMENT, REASON, REINFORCEMENT (Sec. 7.25).

Paraphrase relations have arguments in dominant and subordinate roles, with the subordinate argument supporting or supplementing the dominant one. I designate as the dominant argument the assertion which intuitively appears more central and essential to the message being communicated.
In most cases what I feel to be the dominant argument appears first in grammatical structure, but in Negated Antonym paraphrase the dominant argument follows the subordinate one, giving the effect of a climax. The four kinds of paraphrase evident in Gurung are Equivalence, Generic-Specific, Amplification, and Negated Antonym.  

In Equivalence paraphrase the second argument supports the first by rephrasing, and may be represented by (44), with (45) as a typical example, in which P is '____ speaks sharply', an equivalent of '____ says short words', which is P. The common term a is the Agent, not mentioned explicitly in this Gurung sentence.

44. Pa ∧ P'a
45. khqyq khqyq tf-ji qxi-ji bi-m'y, cargō pq-m'y.

Sometimes one-CL two-CL say-NP sharp speak-NP P'a

Sometimes (he) says short words, (he) speaks sharply.

The second argument of Generic-Specific paraphrase supports the point of the first by substituting a more specific predicate or phrase. It is symbolized in (46).

46. gPa ∧ sPa

The relation of Generic-Specific is exemplified between the clauses of a Paraphrase Sentence in (47), and between the two Heads of an Appositional Noun Phrase in (48).

24 Longacre (1972:57-61) includes in addition three other kinds of paraphrase in his general taxonomy: Specific-Generic ('They dug up Assyrian ruins, they spent that season excavating'), Contraction ('We'll bury the fish in the ashes, we'll hide it'), and Summary ('John works at the sawmill; Jim at the repair shop; and Al at the printshop - that's what they're doing'). Grimes (1972b:257-61) describes seven supporting predicates, but the set only partially overlaps with Longacre's seven varieties of paraphrase.

25 The Gurung expression tf-ji qxi-ji means something like 'in monosyllables', as of an angry person's speech lacking the polite turns of phrase. Compare the English idiom he was very short with me.
After having a conversation, after saying 'Yes, OK', ...

Youngest Brother, (the one who) came here on a previous (occasion), ...

The relation of Amplification paraphrase differs from Generic-Specific paraphrase in that the second argument formally adds detail to the first while retaining the same verb in predicate position, instead of replacing it with a more specific expression. In the symbolization (49) the repeated term a represents the term common to the two propositions. In (50) this is the Agent cá-maŋ-d 'they', which is however anaphorically deleted from the second clause in surface structure.

49. \( P_a \land P_{ab} \)

50. cá-maŋ-d \( P_{i-}' \), cxamî-lai \( P_{i-d}' \).

Amplification paraphrase may also be realized by an Appositional Noun Phrase, as in (51).

51. cá cxamîri, cá phâlanâ cxamîri, ...

In Negated Antonym paraphrase the subordinate argument supports the dominant, positive one by negating the opposite. Stylistically, the negation precedes the assertion which it supports. The logical relation may be represented as in (52).

52. \( \overline{P_a} \land [P_a'' \neq P'a''] \)

where a and a'' are antonyms.

(53) is an example of the Negated Antonym paraphrase realized in an Antithetical Sentence, and (54) in an Inversion Sentence. (Grammatical sentence types are discussed in Sec. 6.3).
2.35 Temporal connection includes the relations between events or states which succeed one another in time, and events or states which overlap in time. The overlap relations observed in Gurung involve a continuous activity or state \( P \) as a temporal setting for either a coterminous activity or state \( Q \), as represented in (55) and exemplified in (56), or for a punctiliar event \( Q \), as represented in (57) and exemplified in (58).

26Grimes (1972b:266) argues that it is unnecessary to treat temporal connection, whether sequence or simultaneity, as a separate relation because the connection between events can be represented purely as conjunction ('collection' in Grimes' terms) but with a time index associated with each event to mark its location and duration in a time continuum (Litteral 1972). But because of the marked difference in (surface) grammatical structure between the relations of conjunction and temporal connection I follow Longacre (1972) in treating them separately.
In the relations of temporal succession there is evidence in Gurung for the distinction within the main predication of an event (punctiliar) from an activity or state (covering a span of time). I have found no syntactic evidence to distinguish event from span in the subordinate predication, so I represent it as an event, P, in the symbolizations below. The event-event sequence is symbolized in (59) and exemplified in (60).

59. \( P \land Q \)

60. \( kag\acute{a} \ pxro-\stackrel{l}{-} k\acute{h}\grave{a}^-\text{bae} \ todon \ k\acute{h}ib\acute{a}-\stackrel{\prime}{-} ya \)

fragment grind-\text{IN} finish-\text{AJ} instant \( O_\text{man-EM} \) also \( P \)

\( t\acute{g}^-k\acute{h}a-\stackrel{\prime}{-} \)

arrive-\text{come-PA}

Just as the grinding of the fragments was finished, the old man arrived.

The event-span sequence is symbolized in (61) and exemplified in (62).

61. \( P \land Q \)

62. \( bya-\stackrel{\prime}{-} \text{la-\text{c}}} \ \text{birf} \ k\acute{h}an\acute{f} \ \text{ti-m\acute{u}}? \)

wedding do-\text{CJ} \ where live-NP \( P \)

\( Q \)

After (they) are married where do (they) live?

In the corpus, the most common order is for the temporally

\[27\]

In contrast with paraphrase relations (Sec. 2.34), it appears that in temporal connection the main predication is generally the second clause in grammatical structure. The temporal relations are generally expressed by complex sentences, and under normal intonation conditions the event expressed by a main clause is given some prominence over the event expressed in the subordinate clause. In Gurung, this correlation may be due to the fact that the main clause normally comes in sentence-final position, which is the position where one expects to find a concentration of new information (Grimes 1972b:305ff.). However it seems to me related rather to the fact noted by Longacre (1968:1.109-10), that in temporally linked paragraphs, such as narrative, the peak comes late, as a climax, whereas in hortatory and explanatory paragraphs the peak comes early, 'much like the topic sentence of traditional rhetoric'.

---

27 In contrast with paraphrase relations (Sec. 2.34), it appears that in temporal connection the main predication is generally the second clause in grammatical structure. The temporal relations are generally expressed by complex sentences, and under normal intonation conditions the event expressed by a main clause is given some prominence over the event expressed in the subordinate clause. In Gurung, this correlation may be due to the fact that the main clause normally comes in sentence-final position, which is the position where one expects to find a concentration of new information (Grimes 1972b:305ff.). However it seems to me related rather to the fact noted by Longacre (1968:1.109-10), that in temporally linked paragraphs, such as narrative, the peak comes late, as a climax, whereas in hortatory and explanatory paragraphs the peak comes early, 'much like the topic sentence of traditional rhetoric'.
succeeding event to be the main clause, as in (60) and (62), but when the speaker wishes to give special prominence to the preceding event it may be cast as the main clause, as in (63), where the succeeding event is formally an Adjunct Phrase (Sec. 4.31). 28

63. bya· la-bá· bxanda· osó· khaní · ti-mú?
wedding do-GE than before where live-PLUP

Before getting married where do (they) live?

Temporal succession may be encoded also in the sequence of BUILDUPS in a NARRATIVE PARAGRAPH or of STEPS in a PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPH (Chapter 7).

2.4 The response level was originally posited to describe the relationship of an utterance to its response in DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS (Longacre 1968: I.160-88).

In dialogue, Longacre posits three varieties of appropriate response: QUESTION(QE)-ANSWER(ANS), REMARK(REM)-EVALUATION(EV), and PROPOSAL(PRO)-RESPONSE(RESP). These correlate clearly enough with performatives 'I ask you ...', 'I inform you ...', and 'I command you ...'. 29 If the second speaker makes the appropriate response he is complying with the instruction (explicit or implicit) in the performative. Alternatively, he may respond in a way that counters the first speaker's utterance, with another QUESTION, REMARK, or PROPOSAL. Longacre overlines the symbols for these constituents to mark them as COUNTER-QUESTION (QE), COUNTER-REMARK (REM), or COUNTER-PROPOSAL (PRO). The following example, taken from Shakespeare's

28 The speaker has available devices to implement decisions on staging - that is, decisions as to which elements of a discourse he will make prominent (Grimes 1972b:327ff.).

29 The interrogative performative 'I ask you ...' can be seen as a special case of the imperative performative, namely 'I command you to tell me ...'. But it is such an important special case that I follow Longacre in giving it separate treatment (1968:I.161).
Sec. 2.4

I Henry IV, Act V, 3, 14-18, is cited by Klammer (1971:171) to illustrate the use of countering speeches in dialogue. 30

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hotspur</th>
<th>Douglas, hadst thou fought at Holmedon thus, I never had triumph'd upon a Scot.</th>
<th>REM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Douglas</td>
<td>All's done, all's won. Here breathless lies the King.</td>
<td>REM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotspur</td>
<td>Where?</td>
<td>QE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas</td>
<td>Here.</td>
<td>ANS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I follow Longacre (1968) in notation for the response level, in indicating the sememic function of a portion of discourse in parentheses after the label for the grammatical slot. Thus the four speeches in (64) could be represented in a composite notation as SP-I(REM), SP-C(REM), SP-C(QE), and SP-R(ANS), where SP-I is an INITIATING SPEECH, SP-C a COUNTERING SPEECH, and SP-R a RESOLVING SPEECH, supplying the appropriate response to the preceding speech (see Section 7.3 and the text 'Marriage Customs' in Appendix 1.).

Longacre's treatment of response in dialogue was limited in its mapping to the grammatical level of paragraph, but I include also within response level the type of problem-solving relation evident in the structure of fables, as one type of discourse. An example is the story of the Horse Owner and the Oil Press Owner, which is given in

---

30 Klammer continues the example to include a postposed margin in the paragraph, a Terminating Speech expressing Dissatisfaction, but I am concerned here with the nucleus of the DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, which reveals the relations of sememic interaction.
English translation on the following pages. (The vernacular story appears, with translation, in Glover 1970:25-33.) Following the story is a tree diagram, (65), of the sememic structure, showing recursive embedding of the predicate of PROBLEM-SOLVING (PRO-SO). The predicate has four arguments: an optional SITUATION (SIT), and obligatory CONFLICT (CONF), MEDIATION (MED), and RESOLUTION (RESO).\(^{31}\)

The analysis represented in (65) is supported by the fact that the proposed constituents frequently commence with jxa'-lê 'then', and I have underlined this particle wherever it occurs in the text. jxa'-lê comprises two morphemes 'thus-from', and its literal meaning is 'after that', as a connective marking temporal sequence. The occurrences in sentences 6, 8, 9, 17, 64, 73, and 75 have the function of temporal connection without marking what I have identified as sememic constituents. The particle's function as a discourse connective appears to be an extension of its temporal function, and is seen clearly in sentence 66 of the text where it connects the two POINTS of a HORTATORY DISCOURSE ('Stay a moment' and 'Don't come here') without any temporal significance at all. The occurrences in sentences 11, 45, and 100 similarly connect constituents without temporal function. The remaining occurrences of jxa'-lê (in sentences 19, 20, 26, 28, 50, 76, 77, 78, and 94) appear to combine the functions of temporal sequence and introduction of a sememic constituent.

A further support for the analysis is the fact that each occurrence of the PROBLEM-SOLVING predicate implies a definite

\(^{31}\) Wise (1971:152) posited Situation, Conflict, Mediation, and Resolution as units in the structure of climactic lexemic chapters, which occur in Nomatsiguenga myths. (She posited chapter as level intermediate between paragraph and discourse in the lexemic hierarchy.) One difference in the treatment adopted here is that I make more use of recursive embedding of the PROBLEM-SOLVING predicate than is evident with Wise's lexemic chapters. Grimes (1972b:256) has noted that a response pattern is evident in the structure of fairy tales and of much scientific writing.
set of participants in the roles of villain, victim, and mediator, as set out in Fig. 11 on page 59. 32

The Horse Owner and the Oil Press Owner

1. Once upon a time a certain man went travelling around the country riding on a horse. 2. Going and going, he travelled everywhere.

3. But, one day, as he was walking along, night fell. 4. Looking all around there he saw in one place an oil press. 5. Seeing the oil press he tethered his horse to the press, in the night. 6. Then he went to seek a place where he could sleep, lodge, and eat. 8. Then he walked in the village asking for lodging. 9. Then he obtained lodging. 10. He stayed at the lodging place. 11. Then throughout that night the horse was tethered at the oil press, though.

12. But early the next morning the oil press owner came along. 13. 'Oho! My oil press has given birth to a horse,' he said. 14. 'From now on I will be a horse rider. 15. I have obtained a horse. 16. My oil press has borne a horse.' 17. Then the oil press owner took the horse away, to his own house. 18. A moment after that the horse owner came along. 19. Then the horse owner said 'Where has my horse gone?'

20. Then he returned to the village to seek his horse. 21. 'Last night I left my horse tethered right here, at this oil press. 22. Now where has it gone?' he said. 23. He went to enquire in the village. 24. When he said, 'I left my horse tethered at the oil press in such and such a place, but this morning when I went there it wasn't there. Who took it?', the villagers said 'You will have to ask the owner of the oil press.' 25. The horse owner said, 'Where is the oil press owner's house?' 26. Then the villagers took the horse owner to the house of the oil press owner. 27. He said, 'I had tethered my horse at your oil press. Where has it gone?'

28. Then, when the horse owner spoke thus, the oil press owner said, 'Rubbish! It isn't your horse, it is the horse to which my oil press gave birth. 29. It isn't the

32 Wise (1971:150) notes that the characterization of a particular set of participants in the roles of villain, victim, and mediator is a feature of lexemic chapters in Nomatsiguenga.
one you left tethered. 30. Who would ever leave a horse tethered in a spot where nothing was, where nobody lived? 31. It is the horse my mill gave birth to. 32. It is indeed mine. 33. Henceforth it is not yours, it is mine.'

34. The horse owner said, 'No! Whose oil press would ever give birth to a horse? 35. They don't give birth. 36. This horse is mine. 37. I have travelled around such and such places and come here. 38. As I came here night fell. 39. So, I left the horse tethered here and went to the village to seek lodging. 40. Now, when I come in the morning, I find the horse with you. 41. This horse is mine.'

42. 'No! It is not yours! 43. It is the horse my oil press gave birth to. 44. It is mine,' said the oil press owner.

45. Then, as they were going on and on in this way, a three-day council was held. 46. The village leaders, the elders, assembled and held a council. 47. They held a council for three days. 48. Then (dai) the council did not break up. 49. Nobody was able to dissolve the council.

50. Then as they were doing this a certain old jackal, with a painful discharging eye, came along there. 51. He came along with a rooster gripped in his mouth. 52. 'Hey, jackal, stay there a minute. 53. We will ask you a small matter.' said those men.

54. The jackal replied, 'Yes, if I stay here you people will grab the fowl in my mouth, take it away, and eat it, won't you? 55. I'm not staying, not me, I'm going!'

56. The men in the council said, 'We won't do anything to your fowl. 57. We will ask you only a small matter. 58. We have a law suit before us here. 59. We will ask you only a small matter.'

60. 'No! If you snatch away my fowl, what then? 61. I have at home a wife who has just had a baby. 62. I must take this fowl home. 63. Having taken it home I must give it to my wife to eat,' said the jackal.

64. Then other men in the council said, 'No! Stay a moment. 65. It's only a small matter. 66. Then, don't come here. 67. We'll consult from a distance.'

68. 'If that's what you say, wait on,' said the jackal. 69. 'I will take this fowl and leave at my house. 70. Then (dai) I will singe it, cook vegetables, and feed my wife rice. 71. Then (dai) when I have completed all the arrangements I will come back. 72. You people, stay on right here,' he said.
73. Then the jackal went home and put the fowl there. Then the jackal went home and put the fowl there. 
74. He took it home, singed the fowl, and discarded the He took it home, singed the fowl, and discarded the feathers. Then he cooked the vegetables, boiled feathers. Then he cooked the vegetables, boiled rice, and gave it to the new mother to eat. rice, and gave it to the new mother to eat.

76. Then, when he had fixed everything up, the jackal came back. Then he said, 'What are you asking?'

78. The men said:
The horse owner said, "I travelled all round and have come, visiting various villages. When I came to this place, though, when I came to this place yesterday night fell. I could not find any place to tether my horse. I had left it tethered to this oil press. This morning when I came, I found that the owner of the oil press had taken my horse away. When I said, 'Why have you taken my horse?' he said 'It is not your horse. It is the one my oil press gave birth to, last night. It is not the one you brought and tethered.'"

84. 'In reply the owner of the oil press said "No! Would one tether a horse in a place where there was nothing? It is the one my oil press gave birth to. Last night there was nothing there; now in the morning when I come there is a horse, indeed. My oil press has given birth to a horse, I find, during last night.'"

88. Then the jackal wandered away a moment and came back. Again the jackal wiped his eye. 'Hey, jackal!' 'Yes,' he said. 'What has happened to your eye?' The jackal said, 'Oho, where is the ocean or lake of water in which fire burns? While the fish are biting and biting my eye hurts.'

94. Then the oil press owner said (it was the oil press owner who had asked the jackal before) 'Rubbish, you are mixed up! In what lake of water, or ocean, would a fire burn?'

96. The jackal said, 'Really! You are the mixed up one. Whose oil press ever gives birth to a horse? This horse belongs to that man. Give it to that man.'

100. Then the jackal definitively dissolved the council. Then the jackal definitively dissolved the council. The council was completed indeed, from that day.
Sememic structure (response level) of text HM.
Sec. 2.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicate</th>
<th>Sent.</th>
<th>Villain</th>
<th>Victim</th>
<th>Mediator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ownership dispute</td>
<td>1-101</td>
<td>Pressowner</td>
<td>Horseowner</td>
<td>Jackal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse tethering</td>
<td>1-11</td>
<td>Night</td>
<td>Horse</td>
<td>Horseowner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse theft</td>
<td>12-19</td>
<td>Pressowner</td>
<td>Horse</td>
<td>Horseowner (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locate horse</td>
<td>20-27</td>
<td>Pressowner (?)</td>
<td>Horseowner</td>
<td>Villagers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return demanded</td>
<td>28-49</td>
<td>Pressowner</td>
<td>Horseowner</td>
<td>Elders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitrator sought</td>
<td>50-75</td>
<td>Fear</td>
<td>Jackal</td>
<td>Elders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jackal arbitrates</td>
<td>76-97</td>
<td>Pressowner</td>
<td>Horseowner</td>
<td>Jackal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 11. Cast of various PR-SO predicates in text HM.

Some of the cast participants are not obvious, and in fact it seems somewhat unconvincing to include inanimate entities such as 'Night' and 'Fear'. I am not able at this point to state precise correlations of the posited PROBLEM-SOLVING predicates with (surface) grammatical structures; the analysis is suggestive only of what seems to be a natural feature of much story organization, perhaps common across languages (and cultures) as diverse as Gurung and Nomatsiguenga.

Perhaps further study of various genre of discourse will reveal other patterns of interaction relations which belong within the response level, in addition, that is, to Longacre's dialogue set and the PROBLEM-SOLVING predicate.
CHAPTER THREE

CLAUSE LEVEL

The grammatical clause in Gurung is defined here, following Trail (1970:33), as 'a group of phrases centered around a verb phrase. It is minimally represented by the verb phrase alone.' Clauses typically express semantic relations of the role level (Sec. 2.1) and, by extension, I include as clauses groups of phrases which express role level relations but lack a verb phrase, as in the case of equational clauses with deleted copula. In this chapter, after considering the feasibility and purpose of classification of patterns (Sec. 3.1), I describe basic grammatical clause patterns, with the semantic roles manifested in these contrastive patterns (Sec. 3.2). Lastly, some devices by which the speaker realizes staging decisions, that is, decisions on what parts of an utterance will be made prominent, are described in Sec. 3.3.

3.1 On classifying clause patterns. Grammatical structure of clauses is defined by the surface marking and ordering of clause constituents in a particular language, and is the type of structure treated in standard tagmemic textbooks such as Longacre (1964a). It has proved to be a very direct place for beginning analysis of data in an unfamiliar language, and the effective plan such analysis gives to initial fieldwork is a great strength of tagmemics. A taxonomic approach has been characteristic of tagmemics, and is defended strongly by Longacre (1964a:10ff.), who argues for a grammatical description 'in which patterns are thrown into bold relief'. The point of this, in practical terms, is that a nonnative analyst approaching a language can make rapid headway in learning and assimilating the language if he has available for memorizing a small inventory of patterns which outline the language structure. Just such an inventory has been readily discoverable from the study of grammatical structure by procedures such as those codified by Longacre,
where the significant patterns discovered are called syntagmemes.

Some recent work in tagmemics, however, has moved away from cataloguing patterns. For example, Platt (1971) does not mention syntagmemes at all. The reason appears to be that the study of sememic structure reveals such a variety of pattern that the inventory becomes much too large for practicable assimilation in the language learner's memory. Thus Platt associates with each of several English predicate fillers a set of implications of presumably language-universal role relationships (Grammatical Meanings, or GMs, in his usage), and notes the constraints on manifestation of these GMs in various language-particular syntactic slots such as Subject or Object (Grammatical Forms, or GFs, in Platt's terms). The predicate fillers he examines fall into thirty sets, distinguished mostly by their GM implications, although appeal to syntactic constraints is required to separate some sets such as kill versus murder (1971:90). And Platt does not claim to have exhausted the variety of English predicate fillers.

In a Fillmorean framework, Hope (1972) classified Lisu verbs into eighteen sets by their obligatory roles ('cases' in the terminology of Fillmore and Hope), and most of these sets of verbs further subdivide if optional roles are considered as well. Thus classification of predicate fillers by role sets (Platt's 'GM implications', Fillmore's 'case frames') leads to a number of classes (each class representing a sememic pattern) larger than is fruitful for practical mnemonic use. This does not deny the usefulness of discovering the role set associated with an individual predicate filler, and the necessity of recording such information in the lexicon of a generative grammar, but the number of different role sets likely to occur in a language is large enough 'to suggest that classification alone is not an end in itself' (Grimes 1972b:191).

One attempt to grapple with this diversity of sememic pattern developed during Pike's 1971-2 workshop in Nepal.
Pike suggested, in conversation, that the use of matrices in language description is necessitated by a well-known psychological limit on human conceptual equipment, namely that the brain has difficulty in grasping more than about seven unrelated items. When the number of terms in a system goes much beyond seven, as when a taxonomy of clause types describes scores of types, we tend to lose control of the system. Pike suggests that control can be restored if the numerous terms are arranged in a meaningful way in a multidimensional matrix. When the required dimensions are discovered, the brain has only to store the dimensions, much fewer in number than the terms located in the body of the matrix. So the analytical goal is the discovery of the sememic dimensions.

Hale (1971a) produced a chart of 'sememic predicate function' which set up four binary variables, giving a total of sixteen terms to exhaust the conceptual space – \(2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 16\). One variable is event versus state (interpreted widely to include any nonevent) and the other

---

1 Thus Yngve (1960:452) refers to a 'span of immediate memory of seven plus or minus two'. Yngve seeks to apply this limit in a different area, positing that the span of immediate memory is relevant to a limitation on 'depth' of structure in a particular sentence. Chomsky (1965:197-8) rejects Yngve’s hypothesis on 'depth'.

2 I assume that Pike is referring to a subconscious organization of structure, not a conscious synthetic procedure of the language learner in uttering sentences. My experience is that the most important thing in gaining fluency in a second language is the assimilation of surface patterns, through deliberate drilling. It is the patterns as wholes which are important, not the dimensions of a matrix in which the patterns may be arrayed. Matrix concepts are useful for the analyst preparing language textbooks, especially as they underlie substitution and expansion drills (Brend 1967, Stahlke and Brend 1967).

3 Grimes (1972b:chs.3,4) describes the distinction of event versus nonevent as empirically useful in discourse analysis, and correlated with tense, aspect, or mood distinctions in many languages.
three have been called (Schottelndreyer 1972:4) 'primary roles, Actor, Undergoer, and Referent [called Site in Hale 1972a]. ... Each of these roles may be viewed as corresponding to a set of case relations.' The 'primary roles' appear, then, to be an attempt to incorporate the insights of case grammar into a taxonomic approach, keeping the latter within bounds by severely limiting the number of variables. The approach was largely intended to facilitate typological comparison of a number of grammatical systems, and so Hale has posited 'a limited inventory of putative universal roles in terms of which languages may be comparably described and rather directly compared' (1972a:3). The transitivity system derived from the three primary roles, doubled by the feature of event versus state, is shown in matrix form in Fig. 12.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Und + Sit</th>
<th>Und</th>
<th>Sit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ Act</td>
<td>- Act</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td>Event</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiTransitive</td>
<td>Transitive</td>
<td>SemiTransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiReceptive</td>
<td>Receptive</td>
<td>SemiReceptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ Act</td>
<td>- Act</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>State</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiStative</td>
<td>Stative</td>
<td>SemiStative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiAttributive</td>
<td>Attributive</td>
<td>SemiAttributive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 12. Hale's transitivity matrix (1972a:7).

It is clear that this approach to sememic function is quite distinct from that of Fillmore (1968) and others, such as Langendoen (1970), Platt (1971), Frantz (1971), and Grimes (1972b), whose studies differ in detail but are similar in general outline. The difference of Hale's approach is conditioned, at least in part, by his objective of typological comparison.
In the first place, the definition of the primary roles is quite broad. Especially is this true of the Referent (or Site) which includes notions of animate source, possessor, and beneficiary as well as inanimate source, location, and goal. This leads to the classifying together in one cell of the transitivity matrix sentences which seem quite different in other languages. Thus Schöttelndreyer (1972:81) describes the Sherpa sentences (1) and (2) as both Diattributive (that is, State, + Und + Ref/Sit in Fig. 12).

1. nye 'daldzaalaa den Tuk din 'wye. 
   my friend-Goal carpet six seven-Umk is Ref Und State

   My friend has six or seven carpets.

2. kayul chakumq 'nanglaa 'wye. 
   cup shelf in-Goal is Und Ref State

   The cup is on the shelf.

In Sherpa the only formal difference between the two patterns is the relative order of the Referent (Goal-marked by suffix -laa) and the Undergoer (unmarked), a difference which, Schöttelndreyer points out (1972:44), is correlated with the animate/inanimate distinction of the two Referents. The data is thus formally accounted for, but one feels that the roles of possessor and location should be distinguished as such to account for syntactic differences in languages such as English.\footnote{In terms of Fillmore's early set of cases (1968), the two roles would be Dative and Locative. But in some recent work (Grimes 1973, Frantz 1973) the roles would in fact be combined, at least for certain purposes, in a role called Referential or Range.}

Secondly, Hale suggests (1972a:3) that 'one of the functions of embedding in natural languages is that of preventing the formation of a clause with a higher degree of transitivity than DiTransitive [+ Act, + Und, + Sit]'. While it is true that the vast majority of clauses encountered have no more than three overt roles, exceptions arise. An example
from Platt (1971:103-4) illustrates the problem of deciding to which participant the primary role of Referent would be assigned—presumably to Black & Co. in (3), to Lucy in (4), but to what in (5)?

4. Sam bought a book for Lucy.
5. Sam bought Lucy a book from Black & Co.

Fillmore assumes (1968:24) that 'no case category occurs more than once' in a particular proposition, but this obviously cannot apply to the 'primary roles' as each covers a number of different cases. Note the different candidates (underlined) for the role of Actor in (6), (7), and (8).

6. The needle jabbed my eye.
7. Janine jabbed my eye.

Once multiple manifestations of a primary role are admitted the neatness of Hale's matrix of sememic function (Fig. 12) is destroyed.

Thirdly, Hale assumes that the three primary roles of Actor, Undergoer, and Site are universal, but it is evident from his examples that equivalent messages are assigned different contrastive patterns of roles (that is, different boxes in the transitivity matrix of Fig. 12) in different languages. Thus he regards the Newari example (9) as SemiReceptive, but says that its English gloss (10) is not.

10. Myra came to feel tired.

He cites (11) as an English example of SemiReceptive (1972a:4).
11. It got hot in the room.

However Langendoen (1970:121-2) recognizes situations where one or more roles of the role structure of a predicate must be expressed by sets of two or more members: Patient in (a) and Goal in (b).

a. The train and the bus collided.
b. Christ distributed the loaves to his disciples.
So, the system with only three roles, and the event/state dichotomy, clearly represents a language-particular form, not a presumed language-universal set of role relationships.

I do not dispute the usefulness of Hale's transitivity scheme as a contribution to typological comparison in grammar (Hale 1972a, 1973). However, consideration of the various attempts at sememic cataloguing indicates that no classification of sememic clause patterns is likely to be at the same time (a) easily manageable in terms of producing a conveniently small set of patterns; (b) able to limit roles to not-more-than-once appearance in a proposition; (c) intuitively satisfying in its representation of individual examples in terms of a non-language-particular conception of semantic units.

In view of the difficulties described I refrain from making another attempt at cataloguing sememic patterns. In the words of Joseph Grimes (1972b:193):

Linguistics has a long history of classifying surface grammatical patterns. It therefore comes as a mild surprise to some to find that the classification of the semantic categories that stand behind surface patterns is many times more complex, so much so that it ceases to be useful.

The data presented in this chapter are intended, therefore, to be illustrative only, not exhaustive, of the sememic patterns expressed in Gurung clauses.

3.2 Grammatical structure of clauses. Study of the grammatical structure of the clause involves identification of units in the structure (clause-level tagmemes) and of clause constructions (syntagmemes). The manifestation of tagmemes involves the selection of particular relational markers (the case particles) on noun phrases within the clause, the ordering of the noun phrases, and the distributional variants of the clauses.

The main case particles in Gurung are the set of postpositions (some of them clitics) listed in Table 3 along with the case labels which are used to represent a noun phrase marked with the particular particle in formulas and examples.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Benefactive (BEN)</td>
<td>-e lxa·giri</td>
<td>'for'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comitative (CMT)</td>
<td>-ne, -ne prí,</td>
<td>'with'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ne ba·lu, mane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative (CMP)</td>
<td>-bxandó</td>
<td>'than'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative (DAT)</td>
<td>-lař</td>
<td>'DAT'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergative (ER)</td>
<td>-d(i)</td>
<td>'ER'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive (GEN)</td>
<td>-e, -l(a)</td>
<td>'of'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative (LOC)</td>
<td>lli, llydf</td>
<td>'after; behind'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nxorì</td>
<td>'inside; within'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>osō</td>
<td>'before; in front of'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phiři</td>
<td>'upon'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-š(t)</td>
<td>'in; to; at'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sammá·</td>
<td>'up to; until'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ydf</td>
<td>'toward'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source (SRC)</td>
<td>-lé, -l álé, -ylé</td>
<td>'from (spatial)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seró</td>
<td>'since; from (temporal)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thematic (THM)</td>
<td>-dí, -m, -l a</td>
<td>'topic (TO)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unmarked (UM)</td>
<td>ϕ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. Case particles.

Ordering of tagmemes in a Gurung clause is a function of the speaker's focus of attention. For any given clause there is a normal order, which I call (following Schöttelindreyer 1972:32) unmarked focus. I define as Subject the nuclear tagmeme⁶ which occurs first in the clause under

---

⁶The concept of 'nuclear tagmeme' is traditional in tagmemics for referring to a tagmeme in the essential, characteristic, part of a pattern. The concept follows from the conviction that emically contrastive patterns occur in a language, as set out for Gurung clauses in Table 4 below. A nuclear tagmeme is diagnostic of its pattern (syntagmeme),
Sec. 3.2

the condition of unmarked focus. In classifying clause constructions I will utilize in addition the slots of Predicate (the verb with auxiliaries, or a copula with predicative noun or adjective), Object (the undergoer of the action, if distinct from the Subject), Locative (the place at which or to which the action is oriented), and Indirect Object (the nuclear participant secondarily involved in the action). and the definitions of 'nuclear tagmeme' and 'emic syntagmeme' are interdependent (Longacre 1964a:51). Cook (1971a:5) sees a parallel of the nuclear/peripheral dichotomy of tagmemes in grammatical structure with deep structure (sememic) roles which are 'divided into essential and non-essential, depending upon whether they belong to the defining case frame of the verb'.

The subject, so defined, is not necessarily the first constituent of the clause. The latter is, in text, frequently some other nuclear tagmeme which has been fronted for emphasis, or a non-nuclear introducer particle or temporal setting. Lyons (1968:344) mentions (but states as inadequate for a full treatment of 'subject') a 'three-way distinction of "psychological" subject (the topic), "grammatical" subject (in surface structure) and "logical" subject (in deep structure)'. His 'logical' subject apparently refers to what I have described as the sememic role of Agent, being the initiator of the action. As for his 'grammatical' subject, there is in Gurung no cross-referencing of the subject in the verb morphology, either in person or number, and, as the case-marking system is nominative-ergative, there is no uniform marking in transitive and intransitive clauses of the participant which would be marked as subject in nominative-accusative languages such as English. There appears therefore no basis for defining a 'grammatical' subject (in Lyons' terms) in Gurung. [The same can be said of Lisu, and no doubt of many other Sino-Tibetan languages. In Lisu, there seems no basis for the notion of subject even in deep structure, according, that is, to the model of Chomsky (1965). Hope (1972:7) stated as questionable 'the relevance of the notions subject and object to the empirical facts of Lisu'.]

The definition of Subject given in the text is rather the 'psychological' subject, or topic, which is defined by Hockett (1958:20) as the first constituent: 'the speaker announces a topic and then says something about it.' In Gurung, as in the Chinese examples Hockett cited, it is common for the topic (Subject) to be deleted in noninitial utterances in discourse.

Anderson (1971:103) argues that the dative case (which
The various contrastive clause constructions have *distributional variants* - independent, subordinate, and gerund - according to their place of occurrence in a sentence. The clause variants are formally distinguished by the verb suffixes (Sec. 5.1). An independent clause can comprise a sentence nucleus, while a subordinate clause occurs as a sentence margin (Sec. 6.1). A Gerund Clause occurs mainly embedded in a clause-level or phrase-level slot, although the gerund form is also used as a sentence nucleus. In (12) the Gerund Clause fills the Subject slot.

12. [egxaró: gate mritú ba:n |xaudí-my,] cá-r
    eleven day death ban apply-NP that-on T:LOC

pxró kú-ba ax-tá.
shed move-GE not-OK
S:gerCl Pred:itrVP
[On the eleventh day a deadly ban applies;] moving
sheds on that (day) is not right.

A very common occurrence of the Gerund Clause is as the axis of a Relative Clause in the Modifier slot of Modified Noun Phrases (Sec. 4.11). The Relative Clause consists of a Gerund Clause (ending in -ba) together with the genitive case particle -e, giving the combined verb suffix -bae, which I have glossed in examples singly as 'adjectivizer (AJ)', as in (13) and (14).

13. kag xyo-bae cala:n
    rice cook-AJ custom
M:RelCl H:n
method (by which they) cook rice

14. xrgsa xrgsa-é mró-r-bae mxa·rsi m|xá
    self self-of field-in-AJ marši rice
M:RelCl M:AdjP H:n
marši rice (which is) in (their) own fields

*typically manifests Indirect Object* is a variant of the locative case. I have distinguished them in Gurung because they have formally distinct case-markings and are selected by different verbs.
The nuclear formulae of seven basic contrastive clause patterns are shown in Table 4, using a notation adapted from that suggested by Pike to represent both grammatical and sememic constituents in a construction. Each tagmeme of the construction is represented theoretically by an array of nine boxes, of which the first six are shown in Fig. 13 with labels suggested by Hale (1972a:2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Systemic class</th>
<th>Item</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical</td>
<td>1. Focus</td>
<td>2. Category</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig. 13.** Grammatical and sememic features of a tagmeme (from Hale 1972a:2).

But only boxes 1 and 2, corresponding to the traditional tagmemic 'function slot' and 'filler class', are required to identify grammaticotagmemes and are employed in the formulae of Table 4. The sememic roles of box 4 have also been added in Table 4 to show the interrelation of sememic and grammatical structure at clause level. The seven clause constructions fall into three groups according to the number of nuclear noun phrases in the construction: two one-place, three two-place, and two three-place constructions.

---

Pike's notation also included a third row, with boxes 7, 8, and 9, to represent phonological function, class, and item (Pike 1970, Klammer 1971). The abbreviated array of only three boxes used in Table 4 uses essentially the same approach as Becker (1967:6), Platt (1971:5), and Franklin (1971:3), although these authors employ differing terminology. They mention also a fourth aspect of 'lexical meaning' (Becker) or 'semantic category' (Franklin), corresponding to Hale's 'sememic class (= concept)', but I have not seen any satisfying treatment of this notion.
Sec. 3.2

One-place patterns:

1. Intransitive clause
   \[ \text{Sub} \mid \text{UM} \mid \text{Pred} \mid \text{itr VP} \]
   \[ A,X,P, N,F \]

2. Descriptive clause
   \[ \text{Sub} \mid \text{UM} \mid \text{Pred} \mid \text{des VP} \]
   \[ N,P \]

Two-place patterns:

3. Transitive clause
   \[ \text{Sub} \mid \text{ER} \mid O \mid \text{UM, DAT} \mid \text{Pred} \mid \text{tr VP} \]
   \[ A,C, AX \mid N,P, F \]

4. Loc-Intrans clause
   \[ \text{Sub} \mid \text{UM} \mid \text{Loc} \mid \text{LOC} \mid \text{Pred} \mid \text{li VP} \]
   \[ A,P \mid R,G \]

5. Existential clause
   \[ \text{Sub} \mid \text{DAT} \mid O \mid \text{UM} \mid \text{Pred} \mid \text{exl VP} \]
   \[ R,X \mid N \]

Three-place patterns:

6. Ditransitive clause
   \[ \text{Sub} \mid \text{ER} \mid \text{IO} \mid \text{DAT} \mid O \mid \text{UM} \mid \text{F,P,N} \]
   \[ A,C \mid G,GX \]
   + \[ \text{Pred} \mid \text{dtr VP} \]

7. Loc-Trans clause
   \[ \text{Sub} \mid \text{ER} \mid O \mid \text{UM,DAT} \mid \text{Loc} \mid \text{LOC} \]
   \[ A,C \mid P \mid G \]
   + \[ \text{Pred} \mid \text{ltr VP} \]

Table 4. Grammatical clause patterns. 10

10 Abbreviations are listed starting page x. Symbols in box 2 (such as UM, ER . . . ) refer to noun phrases with the indicated case marking, as listed in Table 3.
The two one-place constructions, Intransitive and Descriptive, differ in the form of predicate: an intransitive verb versus an essive verb plus complement. The complement may be an adjective or a noun phrase, and the complement noun phrase may serve in either an identificational relation to the subject or a classificatory relation. The following examples illustrate different roles (box 4) manifested in the various slots (box 1) for each of the seven contrastive patterns.

(1) Intransitive Clauses may have Subject as Agent, in (15), as Experiencer, in (16), as Patient, in (17), as Neutral, in (18), or as Factive, in (19).

15. mg·bá asó ri-l txu-mu.
O:woman before arise-IN NEC-NP
Sub:UM Ma:av Pred:itrVP

The old woman will have to get up first.

16. kwí mxı saq tó-bá·.
some men mind happy-GE
SubX:UM Pred:itrVP

Some men (were) happy.

17. nó· cyugú cyugú cae-í.
rain little little ease-PA
SubP:UM Ma:AdP Pred:itrVP

The rain eased a little.

18. mxwí gxrí sè pandrá paisá· caidi-m.
rupee one and fifteen pice needed-NP
SubN:UM Pred:itrVP

One rupee fifteen pice is needed.

11Essive verbs are the three roots mu-, ta-, and -ηξ[ which render the English copula be (Glover 1969b).

12Hope (1972:26-7) posits two cases, Transitive and Essive, to accommodate such a distinction in predicate nominals. I have not found strong syntactic evidence in Gurung for the distinction and so have not posited these as roles.

13The examples include nonnuclear clause level tagmemes such as Manner (Ma) and Temporal (T), which are shown without
Sec. 3.2

19. tiyā' sq-ga' ta-dī, ...
today three-day happen-PA
T:it Subp:UM Pred:itrVP

Today it has been three days, ...

(2) Descriptive Clauses may have Subject as Neutral, in
(20), or as Patient, in (21), and Predicate filled by copula
plus adjective, in (20-21), noun in identificational relation,
in (22), or noun in classificatory relation, in (23).

20. cá khība mā-bā sā:ron garīb mu-nā'.
that O_man O_woman extremely poor be-DI
SubN:UM Pred:desVP

That old man and old woman were extremely poor.

21. khība mā-bā ph6d~ ta-serō
O_man O_woman starving become-since
SubP:UM Pred:desVP

Because the old man and the old woman starved

22. gāgyu bi-ba' pxro nxo-rbae ta·rgya kyú ya'.
Seti call-GE cliff below-of white water is
SubN:UM Pred:desVP

The Seti River is the white water below the cliff.

23. tiyā' chyā-bāe joga athaba din mu.
today good-AJ time or day is
SubN:UM Pred:desVP

Today is a good time, an auspicious day.

The three two-place constructions, Transitive, Loc-
Intransitive, and Existential, contrast, firstly, in their
Predicate fillers, being nonessive verbs for the first
two and the essive verbs ta- and mu- for the Existential;
and secondly, in the case-marking on the Subject - ergative
for the Transitive Clause, unmarked for the Loc-Intransitive,
and dative or locative for the Existential clause. The
Loc-Intransitive and Transitive Clauses further contrast
in the function and marking of the second nuclear slot: a

sememic roles subscripted to the grammatical slot, as is the
case for nuclear tagmemes.
Locative, marked with locative, source, or comitative, versus an Object, which is either unmarked (if inanimate) or marked as dative (if animate). A subset of Loc-Intransitive clauses, those which have a verb of motion as Predicate filler, optionally include a Source slot and a Purpose slot\textsuperscript{14} as in (31) and (32). The points of contrast of the three two-place constructions are summarized in Fig. 14.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicate filler</th>
<th>Subject marking</th>
<th>2nd slot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transitive</td>
<td>non-essive</td>
<td>ergative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc-Intrans</td>
<td>non-essive</td>
<td>unmarked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existential</td>
<td>essive</td>
<td>dative or locative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 14. Contrasts of two-place clause patterns.

(3) Transitive Clauses may have Subject as Agent, in (24), as Noninstigative cause, in (25), or Agent-Experiencer, in (26), and Object as Patient, inanimate as in (24), or animate as in (25), as Neutral, in (26), or as Factitive, in (27).

24. \textit{ŋa-di ch'adá bo-la'. me-ER umbrella take-PLUP SubA:ER O_p:UM Pred:trVP}

I had taken an umbrella.

25. \textit{cá mexi-jau-lai bele ná'-d pá'-i. that person-PL-DAT much rain-ER soak-PA O_p:DAT Ma:av SubC:ER Pred:trVP}

Those people really got soaked by the rain.\textsuperscript{15}

\textsuperscript{14} Purpose is treated as sememically a relation of the statement level (Sec. 2.33), but grammatically it may act as a clause-level tagmeme.

\textsuperscript{15} The inversion of order in this clause, with the Subject in noninitial position, is a consequence of the speaker's
26. ğałyō-d cá  ka·gadā  ˂xyo-m.
we INCL that paper look_at-NP
Sub_3:ER  O_3:UM  Pred:trVP

We will look at that paper.

27. kwī-ri puja· bomwē-d la-m.
temple-in worship Brahmin-ER do-NP
Loc:LOC  0_3:UM  Sub_3:ER  Pred:trVP

In the temple the worship is done by the Brahmins.

(4) A Loc-Intransitive Clause may have Subject as Agent, in (28), or as Patient, in (29), and Locative as Range, in (28), or as Goal, in (29), where the Locative is deleted as recoverable from the cultural context (Grimes 1972b:196),
and in (30).

28. kwī gxyō·  kha·gu rō-mu, ...
some road near lie_down-NP
Sub_3:UM  Loc_3:LOC  Pred:liVP

Some lie down near the path, ...

29. cá  txi-ri beseri nā: yū·la.
that time-in much rain descend-PLUP
T:LOC  Ma:av  Sub_p:UM  Pred:liVP

At that stage it was raining heavily.

30. nī  dxi·r samma-n  ḥya·kā-n  xya·-ī.
we EXCL house-to until-EM exact-EM
Sub_3:UM  Loc_3:LOC  Ma:av

We went right up to (our) house.

Motion Clauses, as a subtype of Loc-Intransitive, may have optionally expressed Source slot, as in (31), and a Purpose slot, as in (32).
Sec. 3.2

31. kyai piru-lé phéri pudí sa Ağak xya'-bée there level-from again Putali Sadak go-AJ

Src_SRC Intr:intr Loc_G:LOC

xya'-y perpendicular road-toward go-PA

Pred:liVP

From over there, again (I) went along the road at right angles, which goes to Putali Sadak.

32. phéri ni gra·una-r thu-ma Confidential friend-PL-DAT meet-GE-to

Intr:intr Sub_A:UM Loc_G:LOC Pu:puCl

yu-i come_down-PA

Pred:liVP

Then we came down to the airport to meet friends.

(5) Existential Clauses may have Subject as Range (with locative marking), in (33), or as Experiencer (with dative marking), in (34), and Object as Neutral, in (33).

33. bxå·dó-ri kxë ηxa-gō mu-ná'. pot-in bread five-CL be-DI

Sub_R:LOC O_N:UM Pred:exlVP

The pot had five pieces of bread in it.

34. ηa-lai lxé dxukhα ta-í. me-DAT much difficulty be-PA

Sub_A:DAT O_N:UM Pred:exlVP

I had much difficulty.17

The two three-place constructions, Ditransitive and Loc-Transitive, contrast in the normal position of the Object relative to the third term: it follows the Indirect Object, which is filled by a dative phrase, in the Ditransitive Clause, and it precedes the Locative, which is filled by a locative phrase, in the Loc-Transitive Clause. Correlated with this are the facts (a) that the referent of the phrase

17 With an abstract noun such as dxukhα 'difficulty' and the verb ta- 'exist, happen, befall, elapse, be' it is not clear if the role is Patient, Neutral, or even Factitive.
Sec. 3.2

filling the Indirect Object slot is animate, normally personal, whereas the referent of the phrase filling the Locative slot is inanimate, and (b) the phrases filling the Locative and Indirect Object slots are formally distinguished by their case-marking postpositions.

(6) Ditransitive Clauses may have Subject as Noninstigative cause, in (35), or as Agent, in (36-7); Indirect Object as Goal, in (35-6), or as Goal-Experiencer, in (37); and Object as Factitive, in (35), as Patient, in (36), or as Neutral, in (37).

35. kyú-di ɳi-lai ɋxê ɳá-s la-wa-ʃ. water-ER we-DAT much damage do-EM-PA SubC:ER IOG:DAT OP:UM Pred:dtrVP

The water did us a lot of damage.

36. qa-d kxi-lai [sad ɳx{ ɋx{ biridi-brè] me-ER you-DAT week two two skip-RP SubA:ER IOG:DAT

I sent two or three letters to you [at two week intervals].

37. cá-e pxanxq’g-dû qa-d karna-lai that-of morrow-next me-ER Karna-DAT T:MNP SubA:ER IOGx:DAT

The next day I showed Karna Ghacok village.

(7) Loc-Transitive Clauses may have Subject as Agent, in (38), or as Noninstigative cause, in (39); Object as Patient, in (38-9); and Locative as Goal, in (38-9). In (39) the Locative is not overtly expressed but is implicit as cú-ɾ 'here' in the verb bxwi- 'bring'.

The water did us a lot of damage.

I sent two or three letters to you [at two week intervals].

The next day I showed Karna Ghacok village.

(7) Loc-Transitive Clauses may have Subject as Agent, in (38), or as Noninstigative cause, in (39); Object as Patient, in (38-9); and Locative as Goal, in (38-9). In (39) the Locative is not overtly expressed but is implicit as cú-ɾ 'here' in the verb bxwi- 'bring'.

The next day I showed Karna Ghacok village.
38. нг·са·р·баэ mxi jaga-d1 cá khib né mà·бá village-in-AJ person PL-ER that 0_man and 0_woman Sub_A:ER O_p:DAT
ladì gxa·gá-r bo·xya·-f. DAT cremation_place-to take-go-PA Loc_G:LOC Pred:1trVP

The people of the village took the old man and the old woman to the place of cremation.

39. bana·-r·bae sì dxy·jaú tâ·n gâgyu·-d nó·bxwi·-lå. forest-in-AJ wood plant-PL all Seti-ER carry-bring-PLUP O_p:UM Sub_C:ER Pred:1trVP

Trees from the forest, all were brought down (here) by the Seti River.

Like Loc-Intransitive Clauses, Loc-Transitive Clauses also have a motion subtype. The role of Source is obligatorily added to the sememic role set when the predicate expresses translational motion (that is, motion from place to place), although either Goal or Source may be deleted from the (surface) grammatical structure of the clause as being implicit in the predicate, (as, for example, the predicate 'bring' implies a Goal 'here' in (39)), recoverable from the wider context (as in a narrative of travel where the Source of a clause is often the Goal of the preceding motion and, if so, need not be stated), or irrelevant to the speaker's purpose. (40) illustrates an explicit Source, with the Goal, 'home', implicit in the narrative situation.

40. ti·gaë cá khib mà·bá-dí ná·sa·-ýlé kāgá one-day that 0_man 0_woman-ER village-from fragments T:NP_m Sub_A:ER Src_S:SRC O_p:UM
bxá·-f. bring-PA Pred:1trVP

One day that old man and old woman brought rice fragments (home) from the village.

3.3 The staging system. 'Staging' is Grimes' term (1972b: 327ff.) for the aspect of linguistic structure whereby units of discourse are presented by the speaker from a particular
perspective. In this section I discuss various grammatical devices for realizing staging decisions - word order, particles marking topic or prominence, and deletion and afterthoughts.

3.31 Word order in Gurung appears to be an expression of decisions on staging - the speaker's perspective on the state or event described. In Gurung, as in Sherpa (Schöttelndreyer 1972:31-47), there is an unmarked, or 'normal', mapping from participant roles to word order, governed by the two factors of role ranking and animateness of the participant. A marked order results from the influence of a special orientation of the speaker's interest. In the unmarked order, shown in the formulae in Table 4, page 71, the effect of participant role is indirect, being channelled through the case-marking system. The ranking of case-marked phrases which determines their order in clauses unmarked for staging is:

41. ER SRC (UM DAT) LOC

That is, ergative outranks source, which outranks unmarked and dative, which outrank locative. I do not have clear evidence for separating the unmarked and dative cases in the ranking scale, and so show them as a group within parentheses. The following examples illustrate the case ranking (41).

Ergative before dative:

42. ḍa-d kxi-lai ax-cá-syo.
   me-ER you-DAT not-eat-EM
   Sub:ER O:DAT Pred:trVP
   A

I won't eat you!

Ergative before unmarked:

43. addá-d chá·b ḍhaudi-f.
   office-ER stamp affix-PA
   Sub:A'ER O:UM Pred:1trVP

The office affixed a stamp (to the document).

---

18 Compare Grimes' statement for English (1972b:339): 'The unmarked mapping that relates the Agent role (when present; otherwise some other role) to subject, which in turn is related to topic via the modal system, is called the active voice.'
Ergative before source before unmarked:

44. ȵi kʰib né m玥-bé-di n玥-sa-ulé cha-lé
we O-man and O-woman-ER village-from thus-AV
SubER SrcSRC Ma:av
kəgə mxæ-bxa-1á.
fragments seek-bring-PLUP
O_plUM Pred:ltrVP

We old folks thus obtained rice fragments from the village.

Unmarked before locative:

45. m玥as'I nxe-r p玥-my
rice milk-in soak-NP
O_plUM LocR:LOC Pred:ltrVP
(They) soak the rice in milk.

Superimposed on the ranking of (41) is the priority of animate participants over inanimate, which readjusts the order as illustrated in examples (46-7).

Animate dative before inanimate ergative:

46. chadá ax-bo-bée mxl-lai beseri n玥-d
umbrella not-take-AJ person-DAT much rain-ER
O_pDAT SC:ER
ŋi'thrú kale p玥-[-].
completely soak-PA
Ma:av Pred:trVP
The people who didn't take umbrellas got completely soaked by the heavy rain.

Animate dative before inanimate unmarked: ¹⁹

47. m玥-lai sološ pl-[-].
king-DAT salute give-PA
IOG:DAT O_plUM Pred:dtrVP
(The guard) gave the king a salute.

¹⁹In (41) UM and DAT are parenthesized as being of the same rank, because I have no clear evidence to establish a priority between them with all animate or all inanimate participants. In practice, the dative participant is usually animate, and therefore takes priority over an inanimate unmarked.
In addition to these factors, which I regard as producing the unmarked staging pattern, the speaker's orientation of interest has an important, though less well understood, influence. Thus the relatively high ranking of Source in the left-to-right ordering of (41) apparently reflects a tendency for motion clauses to take the starting-point of the motion described as the clause's 'point of departure' (Halliday 1967:212). In (48), which is taken from a travel narrative, the Source is shifted to the front even of the animate participant manifesting Agent.

48. kuną· gxa·dá·-ulé kwi · gera-dun xya·-mʊ.20
Kunanghat-from some Dera Dun go-NP

From Kunanghat some go to Dera Dun.

In questions and imperatives the orientation of the clause is particularly toward the hearer, as a response is requested.21 Thus if the second person pronoun kxi 'you' is expressed in an imperative (a device which gives special emphasis to the command) it is usually placed first, as in (49).

20 The Locative slot in (48) lacks the locative suffix, as a result of an optional rule which deletes the suffix from place names marking the Goal of a motion verb. In (a) the rule has not applied; in (b), like (48), it has.

a. pukʰrú-r yú-brg la-m.
Pokhara-to come_down-RP do-NP
LocG:LOC Pred:liVP

He keeps coming down to Pokhara.

b. kxi pukʰrú yú-ba bxandá a'sq ...
you Pokhara come_down-GE than
SubA:ER LocG:LOC Pred:liVP

Before you came down to Pokhara ...

21 Evidence from Sherpa supports this contention in that the conjunct forms of verbs occur with only first person Actors in the declarative mode and only second person Actors in the interrogative mode (Schöttelndreyer 1972:16). Conjunct forms in Newari verbs are distributed similarly (Hale, pers. com.). The conjunct-disjunct distinction is not a feature of Gurung verb morphology.
49. kxi-d tóI ax-bi-le ŋł-d.  
you-ER anything not-say-AV stay-stay-IM  
Sub₁:ER Ma:avCl Pred:liVP  

You remain (there) silent!

In (50) the phrase involving the second person pronoun, even  
though not as the Subject, is placed first.  

50. kxi-e cxam' nà-e cxalai pi-n.  
you-of daughter me-of son-DAT give-IM  
Oₚ:UM IOG:DAT Pred:dtrVP  

Give your daughter to my son.

It is difficult, however, to account for the contrasting  
word order of the ergative and dative cases in (51) and (52),  
both of which are questions which occurred from the one  
speaker as opening utterances of consecutive paragraphs in  
a dialogue.  

51. surje máe a·ba··d·ām kxi-lai ax-chy'q··bae ţą.  
Surje of father-ER-TO you-DAT not-good-AJ word  
SA:ER IOG:DAT OP:UM  
bi-m [u ax-bi?]  
say-NP or not  
Pred:dtrVP  

Does Surje's father speak harsh words to you [or not?]  

52. kxi-lai cá-maq··d·ām kʰqyq kʰqyq cxá th̷y-]  
you-DAT that-PL-ER-TO sometimes tea drink-IN  
IOₓ:DAT SUB₁:ER T:t OP:UM  
bx-[m [u ax-bx[?]  
give-NP or not  
Pred:dtrVP  

Do they give you tea to drink sometimes [or not?]  

It would appear that in (51) the speaker is focusing on the  

---

(52) is a permissive construction, perhaps pedantically  
translatable as 'Do they allow you (the privilege) sometimes  
of drinking tea or not?' The permissive construction is  
expressed by an Infinitival Verb Phrase, which is phonologi-  
cally and grammatically a close-knit unit (Sec. 4.22). From  
the viewpoint of clause patterns, however, the Predicate  
filler is the auxiliary bx[- 'give', the pattern is Ditransi-  
tive, and the Object is filled by the embedded infinitival  
clause cxá th̷y-] '(you) drink tea'.
behaviour of Surje's father, a new participant in the
discourse at this point, while in (52) he is focussing rather
on the addressee's privileges, although the Agent cá-maq-d-ám
'they' still carries the 'contrastive topic' marking particle
(see following subsection). So this explanation remains a
conjecture.

3.32 Topic-marking particles. Gurung discourse,
especially dialogue, is liberally sprinkled with a number of
emphatic particles, mostly clitics suffixed to nouns, pronouns,
temporals, locatives, or verbs. Most of these I can describe
only as 'emphatic particle (EM)', giving prominence to the
particular lexical item. However, a subset, the three
particles -(a)m, -la, and -di, overtly mark sentence topic.
The item so marked may be new in context, or already mentioned
in the preceding sentences, but in either case the particles
appear to indicate 'change of topic'. The three particles
are not mutually substitutable in all contexts. Semantically,
-1a simply focusses attention on a new topic, as in (53), -di
carries the implication of singling out the topic from a
group, as in (54), and -(a)m conveys the idea of contrast
with other possible fillers of the slot, as in (55-6). But I
gloss all three simply 'topic (TO)'.

53. kwí mxí-la taga’ra ba-ya’-i. kwí mxí-la
some person-TO post take-EM-PA some person-TO
labú ba’ri ba-ya’-i. kwí mxí-la dxaj-mró
radish garden take-EM-PA some person-TO house-field
ba-ya’-i. kwí mxí-la ba’ra-r-bǽ saqá’ xra’ne
take-EM-PA some person-TO garden-in-AJ stake trellis
phargu ta’n nó ba-ya’-i.
pole all carry take-EM-PA
As for some people, (the river) took gateposts. For
some, (it) took (their) radish gardens. For some, (it)
took (their) backyard gardens. For some, (it) carried
away stakes, trellises, poles, and all.
54. kxi bxandá cyq-bá· mu-lal. kxi-dí untis you than young-GE be-PROB you-TO twentynine barsa ta-í. year become-PA
(Speaking to I:) He is probably younger than you. (Turning to W:) You are twentynine.23

55. pailá, bxálu a·bá-e kaq mxyq-í. "oho, cú-m first bear father-of rice taste-PA oh this-TO lála mu-ná'." bi-í. jxa·lé, bxálu a·má-e kaq hot be-DI say-PA then bear mother-of rice mxyq-í. "oho, cú-m ñyú-ba, ax-lxí-m mu-ná'." taste-PA oh this-TO cold-GE not-tasty-GE be-DI bi-í. jxa·lé, bxálu jxajá-e kaq mxyq-í. "oho, say-PA then bear baby-of rice taste-PA oh cú-m lí-m mu-ná'." bi-í birf, jamman cwa·-í. this-TO tasty-GE be-DI say-CJ all eat-PA
First (she) tasted Father Bear's rice. 'Oh, this is hot,' (she) said. Then (she) tasted Mother Bear's rice. 'Oh, this is cold, not nice,' (she) said. Then (she) tasted Baby Bear's rice. 'Oh, this is tasty,' (she) said and ate it all up.

56. X: kxi kádi barsa yú-i?
     you how_many year come_down-PA
Y: ná-m untis barsa yú-i.
   me-TO twentynine year come_down-PA
X: How old are you? Y: As for me, I am twentynine.

The topic particles -Ia and -di occur only on noun phrases or pronouns,24 but the particle -m is distributed

23 Examples involving speeches by, or to, more than one person utilize single letter abbreviations to designate individual speakers, as listed with the published texts (Glover 1970:131) for data from the recorded corpus, or X and Y for hypothetical examples such as (56). J and W represent my wife and myself respectively, but all other designated participants have native speaker competence in Gurung.

24 There are homophonous morphemes occurring as verb suffixes, though: -la 'pluperfect (PLUP)', -di 'past (PA)', and -di 'emphatic (EM)'. 
quite widely. In (57) it highlights a gerund expression, which is functioning as an independent clause giving an unexpected answer to a question, and in (58) it highlights an unusual state of affairs, expressed in a subordinate clause. In both instances the notion of contrast with alternate fillers of the slot, namely the expected answer, or expected state of affairs, is clearly present.

57. W: togó-n pukʰrú-ri {t yq-m u ax-yø? now-EM Pokhara-in brick AVL-NP or not-AVL
I: yq-bá-m. yq-mú, mxə-ɣú mu. AVL-GE-TO AVL-NP expensive be
W: Are bricks available in Pokhara now or not?
I: Certainly (they're) available. Available, (but) expensive.

58. ka: thú-seró-m phéri cá pa·rłe pha·-b dry cut-since-TO again that rationed burn-GE
ma-ná-gon.
be-DI-EM
Since (they) are cutting dry (wood) [in contrast with the usual practice of felling green timber], that (wood) will indeed have to be burnt with restraint.

But there are some examples where the glossing of -m as 'contrastive topic' appears quite unsatisfactory, especially where it occurs more than once in the one sentence, as in (59-60). It appears here to be indistinguishable semantically from other 'emphatic particles'. I am unable to account for the semantic variation from its other instances.

59. hindústhá-na-r xya-·seró-m hindíc ba·d-am India-to go-since-TO Hindi language-TO
chále-n xra-m-au.
naturally-EM know-NP-EM
Since (we) go to India (we) just naturally learn the Hindi language [i.e. without special intent or training].

60. koló mxaina txu-I-báe ɣlq· cá-r ne-si, child month six-CL-AJ infant that-at bed-CJ
ba·lu ró-ba-m la-m-am. together sleep-GE-TO do-NP-TO
A child, an infant of six months, having been bedded down there, was sleeping together (with the woman).
3.33 Emphatic particles. In English, prominence of a particular lexical item in a clause is often signalled by intonation, as in Grimes' example (1972b:306) *MY puppy is black*, where the intonational prominence of *MY* (represented by upper case letters) marks the item which the speaker regards as most informative (as in a contrast with, for example, a preceding *Your puppy is brown*). In Gurung, prominence may likewise be signalled by exceptionally high stress, as in (61), where I have underlined the highly stressed syllable.

61. oho cú-m lá-la mu-ná'.
    oh this-TO hot be-DI
    Oh, as for this, it is HOT.

But prominence is most commonly signalled in Gurung by the use of 'emphatic particles', which may be attached to practically any desired word of the clause. The common emphatic particles are, with nouns, -i, -n, ga, and ya, and, with verbs or adjectives, -da', -dI, -gon, -on, and -au. In (62) prominence is realized in the first clause by pronounced stress, and in the second and fourth clauses by emphatic clitics. The fourth clause is an example of the frequent use of *ga* (or its alternant *ya*) to supply a positive form for the equative verb -nx, but the particle forms always carry the notion of prominence in addition to equation.

62. ax-ŋx', kxi-I-1q: ax-ŋx'. ná-e kula-d
    not-be you-of-EM not-be me-of oil_press-ER
    phi-bá gxoğa. qa-I ga.
    bear-AJ horse me-of EM
    No!! (It) is not YOURS. (It is) the horse my oil press gave birth to. (It is) MINE.

Grimes regards matters of information flow in discourse as 'cohesion', an area distinct from the speaker's perspective, which he calls 'staging', and which includes prominence (1972b:295). It is difficult in practice to delimit staging and cohesion, and I do not attempt the distinction in this description of Gurung data.

In predicate position the possessive is -I(a). The form -bá is a fast speech reduction of the full -báe 'adjectivizer'.
-ya' and -wa' as verb stem formatives are also glossed 'emphatic (EM)'. They appear to intensify the lexical content of the verb. Thus in (55) above, cwa· (= ca 'eat' + wa' 'EM') means 'eat up completely', and in (63) ba-ya' - emphasizes the act of taking (since the objects taken - a cooking pot and firewood - are cumbersome to carry).

63. kyú a·dxý·r bo-m. kxaya·-i ba-ya·-mu, water source-to take-NP pot-EM take-EM-NP s[-l] ba-ya·-mu. wood-EM take-EM-NP (You) take (them) to the tap. A COOKING POT (you) take, (and) FIREWOOD (you) take.

The forms -gon, -on, and -au are added to a regular verb suffix to make the utterance more forceful. -on occurs with -di, -ji, and -mala, giving -don, in (64), -jon, and -malon; -au occurs with -la and -mu, giving -lau and -mau, in (65); and -gon occurs with -l, in (66), and -na.


65. H: ax-sxé-bae kʰlxyo jare, D: tara tiyำ· sê-m-au. not-know-AJ place about but today know-NP-EM H: Round places (you) don't know ... D (interrupting): But now (I) DO know (my way around).


G: Last night (you) cooked (it), indeed.

3.34 Deletion and afterthoughts. The opposite of prominence is 'de-emphasis', which is achieved in Gurung by deletion. Compared with English, for example, the deletion possibilities in a Gurung clause appear quite wide-ranging. In glossing
examples, therefore, it is often necessary to supply in English constituents (in parentheses) which have been deleted in Gurung, either as contextually recoverable, as in (67), or as irrelevant to the speaker's purpose, as in (68).

67. a·rgó, kwí-la, kwí a·muyuí cxamiri mxaí ta-mú. other some-TO some man woman love happen-NP
jxa·lé, 'cá cxamiri, cá ph'alaná cxamiri, ña-lai then that woman that particular woman me-DAT
xri-bx{-n, a·ba·'u, bi-i birí, khe-maq a·ba·-lai beg-give-IM father say-CJ self-of father-DAT
kul-mú. kul-si, jxa·lé bya· ta-m. send-NP send-CJ then wedding happen-NP.

Another (custom), in the case of some (people), some fellow falls in love with a girl. Then (he) says (to his father), 'That girl, that particular girl, ask for her for me, Father.' And he sends his father (to the girl's parents). (The boy) sends (his father) and then there is a wedding.

68. phéri a·rkó tà\'a, cam\'ri kol-má-\-lai pailé again other matter girl child-PL-DAT first phí-f birí sg-gá-ma' cyugú thirí thá·gé bxogó bear-CJ three-day-in small swaddling_clothes
p\'í-m. give-NP

Again another matter - when (a mother) has a baby daughter, at three days (she) gives (her) swaddling clothes (to wear).

A speaker may reverse his decision to de-emphasize a participant, and include it in a tag position, that is, following the Predicate of the clause. Thus, a fairly common phenomenon in the corpus is the afterthought, a noun phrase occurring after the Predicate to which it stands in a role relationship, although in a normal, well-formed Gurung clause the Predicate comes in clause-final position. There is usually a sharp intonational break separating the afterthought from the clause, and it is apparent that the afterthought is a clause constituent which is initially deleted, but which the speaker later decides must be included to avoid misunderstanding. No restriction is evident on the
semantic role of the afterthought within the clause - it is in Agent role in (69), Source in (70), and Range in (71).

69. 'tiyā c̪hiyā- bāe joga aṭhābā dīn mu, bi-i, today good-AJ occasion or day be say-PA jaisi-maq-di. astrologer-PL-ER 'Today is an auspicious occasion or day,' (they) said, the astrologers (did).

70. kwā jāga kī-bxa-dī, pukhrū-le. dai bya-la-i. cloth PL buy-bring-PA Pokhara-from then wedding do-PA (The boy's father) got the clothes, from Pokhara (he got them). Then (they) held the wedding.

71. jxa-lé phulpādi dina-ri, phul-pādi tō-my, kwi-ri. then Phulpati day-on flower-leaf show-NP temple-in Then, on Phulpati, (we) display the flowers and leaves, in the temple (we display them).
CHAPTER FOUR

PHRASE LEVEL

The grammatical level of phrase is defined in Gurung as a group of words, or a single word potentially expandable into a group, which, not being a clause, nevertheless shows relations of internal interdependence of constituents, such as 'head-modifier, linkage of elements, or relation of an element to the clause by means of an overt relator' (Longacre 1964a:74). Phrase level constructions are relevant to sememic structure in that they are the means of specifying elements of propositions, whether the participants or the predicate. In this chapter I describe phrases according to their external distribution: noun phrases (Sec. 4.1), verb phrases (Sec. 4.2), and modifier phrases (Sec. 4.3).

4.1 Noun phrases. In general, as noted in Sec. 3.2, a clause participant is represented by an Axis-relator Phrase with a case-marking particle (as listed in Table 3, page 67) filling the relator slot. The formula for an Axis-relator Noun Phrase is (1),1 which shows the obligatory Axis slot filled by a Modified Noun Phrase (Sec. 4.11), a Co-ordinate Noun Phrase (Sec. 4.12), or an Appositional Noun Phrase (Sec. 4.13).

1. \[ NP_{ar} = + \text{Axis} + \text{Relator} \]

Subtypes of the Axis-relator Noun Phrase are defined by

---

1Underlining of a filler class label within a formula denotes a terminal class, that is, a class the members of which are morphemes not subanalyzed in this description. Grammatical labels, including those of terminal classes, are listed, with a page reference, in Appendix 3.
the particular case particle which occurs, since this determines the distribution of the subtype. Thus (2) contains an ergative noun Phrase and a dative Noun Phrase, and (3) contains a genitive Noun Phrase. The three phrases have filling the Axis slot respectively a Modified Noun Phrase, an Appositional Noun Phrase, and a Co-ordinate Noun phrase.

2. kwí mxi- d kajú ná's-thê-maê, ñê-e
   some person- ER Ghacok village-dweller-PL me-of
   A:NPm R:ER A:NPa
   thu-maê- lai [haudf'-i.]
   friend-PL- DAT scold-PA
   R:DAT


3. khíb né mâ'ba- e [tã']
   Q_man with Q_woman- of word
   A:NP C R:GEN
   [the words] of the old man and the old woman

4.11 Modified Noun Phrase. The formula for a Modified Noun Phrase is (4): ²

4. NP m = ± Specifier ± Modifier² ± Head ± Number
   | pronoun  | noun     | loan num |
   | genNP    | NP a     | NumberP  |
   | AdjunctP | NP c     | plural   |
   | RelCl    | NP expl  |

That is, a Modified Noun Phrase consists of an optional Specifier slot, filled by a pronoun or genitive Noun Phrase; an optional one or two Modifier slots, filled by an Adjunct Phrase or a Relative Clause; an optional Head slot, filled by a noun, Appositional Noun Phrase, or Co-ordinate Noun Phrase, or an Explanatory Noun Phrase (Sec. 4.14); and an

²A superscript numeral on a tagmeme, as in (4), indicates the number of times the tagmeme may occur in the construction.
optional Number slot, filled by a loan numeral, a Number Phrase, or a plural marker. Examples illustrating the various fillers follow.

5. cá mxí sogbra
   that person three-hundred
   Sp:pron H:n Num:NumP
   those three hundred people

6. cá pxra-bae mxí jaga
   that walk-AJ person PL
   Sp:pron M:RelCl H:n Num:plural
   those walking people (= sentries)

7. kxe-maŋ kajú-thę- maŋ
   you-PL Ghacok-dweller-PL
   Sp:pron H:n Num:plural
   you people of Ghacok

8. dx|-r-bae ax-chyä-bae gara. gadi
   house-in-AJ not-good-AJ influences
   M:RelCl M:RelCl H:n
   the evil influences in the house

9. kwí sa·rön garib mxí- maŋ
   some extremely poor person-PL
   Sp:pron M:AdjunctP H:n Num:plural

10. ḋí-e ṃg·sa athaba khol ūlha.
    we-of village that_is district
    Sp:genNP H:NP expl
    our village, that is, district,

Certain restrictions and qualifications need to be stated to the formula (4):

a) In the corpus it is very rare to find two Modifiers in a phrase, as in (8), and uncommon even to encounter a Specifier with a Modifier, as in (6, 9, 10).

b) The Number tagmeme precedes the Head, instead of following it, if either of the fillers of Number or Head is a loanword from Nepali, as exemplified in (11) for the Head, (12) for the Number, and (13) for both.

11. plxi-ǰyú ṃga-ǰyú barsa
    four-ten five-ten year
    Num:NumP H:n
    forty or fifty years
Sec. 4.1

12. ba·roغا 1xо
twelve year
Num:loan_num H:n
twelve years\(^3\)

13. das baje
ten o'clock
Num:loan_num H:n
ten o'clock

c) In a very few cases the Modifier, when manifested by an adjective, follows the Head instead of preceding it.\(^4\)

14. mxи |xэ-d [чэ-m].
person many-ER hold-NP
H:n M:AdP
Many people [hold (it)].

15. bxa·fi cyq-bá·
Y_BRO YT-GE
H:n M:AdP
youngest brother
d) The Head tagmeme of a Head-modifier phrase is normally treated as obligatory (Elson & Pickett 1962:104), but allowing the Head of the Modified Noun Phrase to be optional, as in (4), enables the formula to cover groups of words which clearly act distributionally like other Modified Noun Phrases but which do not contain a Head noun. Because the noun can be recovered from the context, linguistic and/or cultural, I regard these phrases sememically as having a Head which has been deleted in grammatical structure. The Deleted Head Noun Phrase most obviously, and most frequently in a conversational corpus, covers the deictic pronouns 'this' and 'that' in the Specifier slot, as in (16).

\(^3\) 'year' is the indigenous Gurung term, but is only used now in religious contexts, in connection with the twelve-year cycle derived from Tibet. The Nepali loans barsa or sá·1 'year' are used in all other contexts.

\(^4\) Earlier descriptions, such as Grierson (1967[1909]), describe the adjective as following the noun, but this is not generally the case, except for numerals, in my data. In (14-5) the filler is shown as AdP – the adjective is a minimal Adjunct Phrase.
16. K: cú-d [kyw[-bá· a·?] J: [ax-ŋx[.] cú-d
this-ER serve-GE TN not-be that-ER
Sp:pron Sp:pron

[o‘le-bó.] stir-GE
K: This (implement) [is for serving out, is it?]
J: [No.] That [is for stirring.]

I have not, however, discovered any Deleted Head Noun Phrase with a genitive Noun Phrase filling the Specifier slot as would parallel the English (17).

17. Bob's key is in the house. Take mine/John's/hers.

A Modifier slot alone, filled by Adjunct Phrase, in (18-9), or Relative Clause, in (20), can constitute Deleted Head Noun Phrases:

18. [a·rgó rú, kí] mlq-gya· [jxq-mú, kí] pj-gya·
other thread either black-CM put-NP or green-CM
M:AdP M:AdP

[jxq-mú.] put-NP

[(As for) other threads, either (they) weave in]
black, [or (they) weave in] green.

19. [kwé-jaú bxwí-d-ón, cxagana. ŋa-d-ám] lxé [ax-bxwí.]
cloth-PL bring-PA-EM thus me-ER-TO much not-bring
M:AdP

[(We) brought clothes, like that. As for me, I didn't bring] much.

When a Modifier slot filled by a Relative Clause is not followed by the Head noun the genitive case particle -e is often deleted from the adjectivizing ending -bae (see Sec. 3.2, page 69), leaving the gerund form -ba, as with cyq-ba· and yú-ba in (20). Thus the phrase yí-bae cú-r yú-ba in (20) is identical in meaning to (21), where the Head nouns are restored.

20. [bxá· cyq-bá‘.] yí-báe cú-r yú-ba,
Y_BRO YT-GE before-AJ this-to come_down-GE
M:RelCl

[the youngest brother,(] (the one who) came down here on an earlier (occasion)
Likewise a Number slot alone, filled by a Number Phrase as in (22), (which is drawn from the fable of the Old Man and the Old Woman squabbling over five loaves of bread), or by a loan numeral, as in (23), can stand for a full phrase.

22. $sō$ [ŋa ca-μ̄,] ṣx[ [kxi ca-d.] three me eat-NP two you eat-IM
Num:NumP Num:NumP
Three (loaves) [I will eat; you eat] two (loaves).

23. [besa· bele mx̄a-ḡō. mx̄aina-r] đER sae [ax-xyū.] grain very costly month-in 1.5 HUND not-suffice Num:loan_num
[Grain is very expensive. (Even)] 150 (rupees) [a month is insufficient.]

4.12 Co-ordinate Noun Phrase. The formula for a Co-ordinate Noun Phrase is (24):

\[
NP_c = + \text{Head} \pm \text{Head}^n \pm \text{Link} + \text{Head} \\
\text{pron} \quad \text{NP}_m \quad [\text{negō}] \quad \text{pron} \\
\text{NP}_m \quad \text{NP}_a \\
\text{NP}_a \quad \text{npr} \\
\text{npr}
\]

That is, a Co-ordinate Noun Phrase conjoins an indefinite number, \((n+2)\), of Noun Phrases (Modified or Appositional) or proper nouns, including up to two pronouns, with the sememic constraint that each Head must have a distinct referent. The final Head is optionally preceded by a Link, filled by a member of the class [negō], which comprises ne, nerō, negō, and nebae 'with'. The Link is less commonly present when there are more than two Heads in the construction, as in (28).

---

5 The two lines of grammatical analysis are necessary to show the two Modified Noun Phrases, one embedded in the other.
25. cá negó khé-e sajib [kh'a-la:]. that with self-of secretary come-PLUP

H:pron Link:[negó] H:NP m

He and his secretary [had come].

(26) comes in a discussion of how shamans learn their rituals, by imitating, the same as people learn songs.

26. cá-maë pajyu-maë khé-b negó ñi a·ru mxi that-PL shaman-PL study-GE with we other people

H:NP m

Link:[negó] H:NP m

kxwé prí-ba [gxrí-ná:]. song sing-GE one-EM

Those shamans' (way) of learning and we other people's (way) of singing [(are) identical].

27. karna ne ŋa
Karna with me

H:npr Link:[negó] H:pron

Karna and I

28. khe-mée, a·ba·', pxrq-syó-mae a·ba·', a·ma·', self-PL father youth-FEM-of father mother

H:pron H:NP a

ŋa, bya·ulo-mée axgx{ ta-sí, [xya'-lá.] me groom-of ET_BRO be-CJ go-PLUP

H:NP a

Those, (and) the father, the bride's father that is, (and) the mother, (and) I, being the groom's eldest brother, [had gone].

A separate grammatical type is the Emphatic Co-ordinate Noun Phrase, which contrasts with the Co-ordinate Noun Phrase in that it is obligatorily limited to two Heads, it has two obligatory Links, and the Link fillers are restricted to the class [nen], which has only two members, -ne and nen 'both ... and ...'. The same member of the class must appear in both Link slots in the formula (29).

29. NP emc = + Head + Link + Head + Link

\[ NP_m \quad [nen] \quad NP_m \quad [nen] \]

(30) and (31) exemplify the two members of the class.
A variant of the Co-ordinate Noun Phrase is the Alternative Phrase, which concatenates a series of items, separated by nonfinal pause intonation, to express the sememic relation of exclusive disjunction (Sec. 2.32). The grammatical formula is the same as (24) except for the absence of any overt link. (32) is an example (repeated from example (22) of Sec. 2.32).

32. pho-lo, cxe-ixo, ba-roga lxo nxgri khab
deer-year bird-year twelve year within which
The deer year, the bird year, (or) whichever year in
the twelve years (it) matches with, [that is the year
(they) perform (the ceremony)].

I view the expression ba-roga lxo nxgri khab lxo-ne prí
kxri-my 'within the twelve years whichever year (it) matches
with' in (32) as being in Gurung, and in English, a transform
of the regular Modified Noun Phrase in (a):

a. ba-roga lxo nxgri kxri-bae lxo
twelve year within match-AJ year
the year (it) matches (with) within the twelve years

The transform of (a) to the form in (32) is necessitated by
the universal quantifier khab 'which(ever)', which links the phrase to the following clause within an Equivalence Sentence (Sec. 6.34).
Superficially it seems it may be necessary to posit a further variant of the Alternative Phrase, with overt link u 'or', as in formula (33), to handle examples like (34).

33. \[ \text{NP}_{alt} = + \text{Head} + \text{Link} + \text{Head} \]

34. \[ [k\text{h}ab \text{karna} \cdot bx\text{a} \cdot d\text{ur}?] \quad \text{tam}u\text{-m\text{a}q} \ u \quad \text{l\text{a}m\text{-m\text{a}q}?} \]

\[ \text{which Karna Bahadur} \quad \text{Gurung-PL or Tamang-PL} \]

\[ \text{H:NP}_m \quad \text{Link:u} \quad \text{H:NP}_m \]

[Which Karna Bahadur?] The Gurung or the Tamang?

However the vast majority of occurrences of the disjunctive particle u 'or' in the data are in clear cases of sentence disjunction, giving an Alternation Sentence (Sec. 6.36). I prefer then to posit disjunction with u only on Sentence level (in contrast with conjunction with [nego] 'with' which occurs only on Phrase level), and to account for examples like (34) as the result of deletion of the verbs from the disjunct clauses. (34) is thus equivalent to (35) except that the essive verbs have been deleted.

35. \[ \text{tam}u\text{-m\text{a}q} \ mu \ u \quad \text{l\text{a}m\text{-m\text{a}q} \ mu?} \]

\[ \text{Gurung-PL be or Tamang-PL be} \]

\[ \text{Base:desCl} \quad \text{Link:u} \quad \text{Base:desCl} \]

Is (he) the Gurung or is (he) the Tamang?

4.13 Appositional Noun Phrase. The formula for an Appositional Noun Phrase is (36).

36. \[ \text{NP}_{a} = + \text{Head} + \text{Head} \dagger \text{Head}_{n} \]

\[ \dagger \quad \text{pronoun} \quad \text{NP}_m \quad \text{NP}_m \]

\[ \text{NP}_m \quad \text{npr} \]

That is, an Appositional Noun Phrase consists of two or more Head slots, filled by Modified Noun Phrases or, for the first Head, a pronoun or proper noun. The construction is characterized semantically by the fact that the various phrases filling the Head slots must have the same referent, and phonologically by an obligatory intonational juncture after each nonfinal Head, and a drop in voice and increase in speed of utterance for the subsequent Head. It contrasts
grammatically with the Co-ordinate Noun Phrase (Sec. 4.12) in the obligatory absence of any overt link. The identity of referent is made explicit in (37) by the adding of ta-si 'being' to the second Head.⁷

37. ṇa, bya·ulo-māe axgx₁ ta-si, ...
   me groom-of ET_BRO be-CJ
   H:pron H:NPₘ
   I, being the groom's eldest brother, ...

38. cā cxamiri, cā pʰalanǎ cxamiri, ...
   that woman that particular woman
   H:NPₘ H:NPₘ
   that woman, that particular woman (that is), ...

39. surje, ɲa-e cxa, ...
   Surje me-of son
   H:npr H:NPₘ
   Surje, my son, ...

40. tiy₄, buda-ba-ra' pəc gate, ...
   today Wednes-day five day_of_month
   H:NPₘ H:NPₘ H:NPₘ
   today, Wednesday, the fifth, ...

4.14 The Explanatory Noun Phrase is sememically a variant of the Appositional Noun Phrase, but with overt link aṭhābā 'that is' and just two Heads (with the same referent):⁸

41. NP expl = + Head + Link + Head
   \[ NPₘ \quad aṭhābā \quad NPₘ \]
   Cl \quad Cl
   The second Head explains the first by substituting a less

⁷The Appositional Noun Phrase construction is the natural Gurung equivalent of a nonrestrictive relative clause. (37) could be glossed 'I, who am the groom's eldest brother, ...'

⁸In one example in the corpus, in the speech of an old man whose Gurung speech is heavily influenced by Nepali, aṭhābā is apparently used in its Nepali sense of disjunctive 'or', equivalent to Gurung u, but the context of the example is confused.
technical expression, which may be a Noun Phrase, in (42), or a Clause, in (43).

42. joga astrological_occasion that_is day
H:NP \text{athabá} \quad \text{H:NP}_m

an astrological occasion, that is, a day,

43. ná's la-wa'-f, \text{athabá} ax-chy'-ba kxé la-wa'-f.
damage do-EM-PA that-is not-good-GE work do-EM-PA
H:Cl \text{Link:athabá} \quad \text{H:Cl}_m

(It) did damage, that is, (it) did bad things.

4.2 Verb phrases. In Table 4 and the examples of Chapter 3 verb phrases were labelled according to their external syntactic function as fillers of clause-level Predicate slots. In this section the internal structure of verb phrases is considered.

4.21 Complement Verb Phrase. The formula for a Complement Verb Phrase is (44):

\[ \text{VP}_{\text{comp}} = \pm \text{Complement} + \text{Head} \]

\[ \text{AdjunctP} \quad \text{verb} \]

\[ \text{NP}_m \quad \text{LocativeP} \]

That is, a Complement Verb Phrase consists of an optional Complement slot, filled by an Adjunct Phrase, a Modified Noun Phrase, or a Locative Phrase (one variant of the Axis-relator Noun Phrase), and an obligatory Head slot, filled by a verb.

Reading the minus sign in the formula yields simply a Head filled by a verb, which accounts for the majority of clause Predicates in the corpus, such as (45).

45. [cá dx[-r] xya'-f-gon.
that house-to go-PA-EM
H:v

[He] went [home], indeed.

The Complement Verb Phrase covers two other major cases: Predicates involving the essive verbs, -γx{'}, mu-, and ta-, as in (46-8); and verbs which have a noun closely
bound phonologically and semantically. The noun superficially appears to stand in an Object relation to the Predicate, but it is constrained always to be next to the Predicate, and the Subject of the verb does not take the ergative case marking as would be so in a normal transitive clause - see examples (49-51).

46. [cú mxi] tamq-maq ax-qxµ.
this person Gurung-PL not-be
Comp:NP m H:ves

[This person] is not a Gurung.

47. [abwí, bela·udí] sa·rón the-bá· mu-la:. indeed guava extremely big-GE be-PLUP
Comp:AdP H:ves

[Indeed! The guavas] were extremely big.

you twentynine year become-PA
Comp:NP m H:ves

[You] are twentynine years old.

49. [khiba] bxq nxa-i.
O-man strength rest-PA
Comp:n H:v

[The old man] rested.

50. [ŋa] sæ q kxo-i. 9
me mind agree-PA
Comp:n H:v

[I] am agreeable.

51. [rí-maq] bya· la-í.
sister-PL wedding do-PA
Comp:n H:v

[The sisters] married.

4.22 Infinitival Verb Phrase. The formula for an Infinitival Verb Phrase is (52):

52. VP in = + Infinitive + Auxiliary
   verb infinitive     verb auxiliary

9kxo- normally means 'understand', but the complement phrase sæ q kxo- means 'be agreeable, be content'.
The class of auxiliary verbs includes khá·-ba 'to be possible; to be finished', txu-ba 'to be necessary', ta-bá· 'to be OK, fitting', bxí-bá· 'to permit (lit. to give)', and la-bá· 'to cause (lit. to make, do)'. Semantically, la-bá· and bxí-bá· have an Agent which is not a participant of the main proposition. (The main proposition's predicate is realized in grammatical structure by the infinitive.) The Agent of the main proposition then is realized in surface structure as a dative-marked Indirect Object, $^{10}$ mxi-maq-lai 'to people' in (53), and qi-lasi 'to us' in (54). $^{11}$

53. cá mxi-maq-lai the-1 la-bá·.
that person-PL-DAT hear-IN cause-GE
O:UM IO:DAT Pred:dtrVP
In:v in Aux:v

Those (orders) (the officer) tells people [Lit. causes people to hear].

54. qi-lasi kxé, se cyurá, ... ca-1 bxí-ɪ.
we-DAT bread meat rice_flakes eat-IN permit-PA
IO:DAT O:UM Pred:dtrVP
In:v in Aux:v

(They) gave us bread, meat, rice flakes, ... to eat [Lit. permitted us to eat ...].

Subject to this qualification regarding the reassignment of the Agent of the main proposition to the Indirect Object slot, just in the case when the auxiliary has a separate Agent, the case-marking of participant phrases in the clause is determined by the predicate of the main proposition, not by the auxiliary. Thus (55) and (56) differ only by the case-marking on the pronoun; unmarked Subject in (55) for the verb ró- 'sleep', and ergative Subject in (56) for the

---

$^{10}$ Grimes (1972b:147,201) suggests that a transformation of 'proposition consolidation', the name suggested by Frantz (1971), applies to coalesce auxiliary predicates with the base predicates they dominate, and to reassign the Agent of the base predicate to another category.

$^{11}$ The two lines of grammatical analysis in (53) and (54) relate to the clause and the verb phrase respectively.
verb ró- 'weave', which is transitive.

55. ṣa ró-la' ax-kʰx̂. me sleep-IN not-possible
Sub:UM Pred:itrVP
I can not sleep [Lit. For me to sleep is not possible].

56. ṣa-d ró-la' ax-kʰx̂. me-ER weave-IN not-possible
Sub:ER Pred:trVP
I can not weave [Lit. For me to weave (it) is not possible].

The filler of the Infinitive slot may not have the negative prefix attached. Whenever a negative Infinitive would be produced an alternative construction is employed. Thus (57) is acceptable, as is (58) with the negative Auxiliary, but (59) is unacceptable and has to be rephrased as (60), which is a Sequence Sentence (Sec. 6.38).

57. [gxa·ná] bxa-l ta-m. jewellery bring-IN OK-NP
   In:v aux
   It is OK to bring [jewellery].

58. [gxa·ná] bxa-lá' ax-tá. jewellery bring-IN not-OK
   In:v aux
   It is not OK to bring [jewellery].

*59. gxa·ná ax-bxa-lá' ax-tá. jewellery not-bring-IN not-OK

60. gxa·ná ax-bxa-l ax-tá. jewellery not-bring-CJ not-OK
   Margin Base
   (You) haven't brought jewellery and (it) is not OK.

4.23 The Desiderative Verb Phrase is quite special in form employing only ṣa·-ba 'to desire'\(^\text{12}\) as auxiliary.

\(^{12}\)Literally, ṣa·-ba means 'to adhere, stick', and hence 'to feel; desire'. The root lā·g- has a similar set of literal and metaphorical meanings in Nepali and other Indo-Aryan languages such as Hindi and Lamani (Trail 1970:202).
Sec. 4.2-3

61. $VP_{desid} = + \text{Stem } \mid \text{reduplicated } + \text{Auxiliary } \mid \eta xq'-'$ 

The reduplication of the stem follows the rules:
(a) only the last syllable of the stem is reduplicated, as in (62), although most stems are monosyllabic anyway;
(b) the initial nasal or voiceless stop of the syllable to be reduplicated becomes the homorganic voiced stop, as in (63-4);
(c) the reduplicated syllable is accented if the original is not, unaccented if the original is accented, as in (65).

62. $g\text{xum}d'i-di \eta xq'-'m$
wander-wander want-NP
Stem:s redup Aux:$\eta xq'-$
wants to wander

63. $m\text{r}q\text{-bd}' \eta xq'-'m$
see-see want-NP
Stem:s redup Aux:$\eta xq'-$
wants to see

64. $c\text{a}-j'a \eta xq'-'m$
eat-eat want-NP
Stem:s redup Aux:$\eta xq'-$
wants to eat

65. $r'o-ro \eta xq'-'m$
sleep-sleep want-NP
Stem:s redup Aux:$\eta xq'-$
wants to sleep

4.3 Modifier Phrases.
4.31 Adjunct Phrase. The formula for an Adjunct Phrase is:

66. $AdP = \pm \text{Modifier } + \text{Head }$

That is, an Adjunct Phrase consists of an optional Modifier slot filled by a comparative phrase (a variant of the Axis-relator phrase - Sec. 4.1), an adverb of degree (Sec. 5.92), or a reduplicative adjective; and an obligatory Head filled by an adjective or an adverb. There are two subtypes of the Adjunct Phrase, called Adjective Phrase and Adverb Phrase, which differ in distribution potential, and in the lexical fillers of the Head slot. The Adjective Phrase, with Head slot filled by an adjective, occurs in the Modifier slot of a Modified Noun Phrase, and in the Complement slot of a Complement Verb Phrase, while the Adverb Phrase, with adverb in the Head slot, occurs in the Manner slot of a Clause. The
terms 'adjective' and 'adverb' are defined for Gurung by this distributional distinction. Occurrence of a reduplicative adjective in the Modifier slot of the Adjunct Phrase is limited to the case when the Head is filled by the same lexical item, as in (67-8), and has an intensifying force.

67. cyugú    cyugú
   little    little
   M:aj      H:aj
   → very little

68. 1xé    1xé
   much    much
   M:aj      H:aj
   → lots and lots

1xé and cyugú are the only members noted so far of the class of reduplicative adjectives.

69. té    chýa-:bá.
   a little    good-GE
   M:degree H:aj
   → a little bit good

70. k’hub    swa-:le [sé-i].
   extremely fine-AV    dance-PA
   M:degree H:av
   → [(He) danced] extremely well.

(71-2) illustrate comparative phrases filling the Modifier slot:

71. cú    bxandá the-:bá.
   this    than big-GE
   M:cmpP H:aj
   → bigger than this

72. bya.    la-bá. bxandá osó
   wedding do-GE    than before
   M:cmpP H:av
   → before getting married

4.32 Number Phrase. The formula for a Number Phrase, covering indigenous numbers up to 9,999, is (73).

73. NumP = ± (Thousand ± Count) ± Link +
   | hájar       | num    | só
   ± (± Count + Hundred) ± Link ± (± Count + Ten) +
   | num        | pxrá     | só    | num
   ± Link ±(Unit)
   | só         | num

That is, a Number Phrase consists of expressions for Thousands, Hundreds, Tens, and Units, all optional, but separated by Links. It is not possible to show in a formula like (73) when
the Links are inserted, but the rule is that they be inserted only to separate the expressions parenthesized in the formula, and they are not always obligatory even then, as shown in (75) where the first Link is parenthesized to show optionality.

The class of numerals (num) contains ηx', 'two', sō', 'three', plx', 'four', ηxá', 'five', tū, 'six', η', 'seven', pxrā', 'eight', and kū, 'nine'. In addition gxr' 'one' is a possible filler of the Count slot in the Thousands expression, and of the Unit slot.

74. plxi- jyú13 sé ηxá four- ten and five Count:num Ten:cyú Link:sé Unit:num fortyfive

75. hájar ηx' (sé) ηx-brá13 sé sō thousand two and five-hundred and three Link:sé Link:sé

Two thousand five hundred and three

Number Phrases may be co-ordinated together like Noun Phrases (Sec. 4.12), but only to produce the Alternative Phrase variant, as in (76).

76. plxi- jyú ηx- jyú [barsa] four-ten five-ten year H:NumP H:NumP

forty (or) fifty [years]

13 cyú and pxrā become -jyú and -brá in compounds.
WORD STRUCTURE AND STEM CLASSES

In this chapter I outline the major classes of stems in Gurung, and describe morphological structure in the relevant sections. On the basis of inflectional criteria verbs are distinguished as a class, and other stems are classified on distributional grounds as pronouns, nouns, adjectives, numerals, postpositions, conjunctions, emphatics, adverbs, and temporals.

5.1 Verbs. Verb stems are characterized by the properties:
(a) they take suffixes to mark aspect-mood, subordinator, or gerund; (b) they take the negative prefix ax-; (c) their suffixes have morphophonemic variants according to the tone class of the verb stem, as detailed in the 'Guide to Orthography' (page xiii).

Syntactically, verb stems are classified as intransitive (itr), essive (ess), transitive (tr), locative-intransitive (li), existential (exl), ditransitive (dtr), or locative-transitive (ltr) according to the grammatical clause patterns in which they can occur (see Table 4 in Section 3.2). The subclassification is not watertight in that some verbs can occur in more than one clause pattern. For example, the stem mu- 'be' occurs both in existential patterns, as in (1), and as the essive in descriptive verb phrases, as in (2).

These examples are repeated from Sec. 3.2.

1. bxq·dö·ri kxq ɳxa·dö mu-ná'.
   pot-in bread five-CL be-DI
   Sub:LOC O:UM Pred:exlVP
   The pot had five pieces of bread in it.

2. cä khiba mä·bä sa·rön garib mu-ná'.
   that O:man O:woman extremely poor be-DI
   Sub:N:UM Pred:desVP
   That old man and old woman were extremely poor.
The formula for verb structure is:

3. \( v = \pm \text{negative} + \text{stem} + \text{suffix} \) 

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ax} & \quad \text{vr} & \quad \text{aspect-mood} \\
\text{cvs} & \quad \text{subordinator} \\
\text{dlvs} & \quad -\text{ba}
\end{align*}
\]

The filler of the stem slot may be either a single verb root (vr), as in (4), or a compound verb stem, (cvs), composed of two verb roots in sequence, as in (5), or a derived loan verb stem (dlvs).

4. \( p\!l\!-\quad \text{du \ biyq‘} \)
   
   give- if
   
   stem:vr suffix:subordinator
   
   if (he) gives/gave

5. \( \text{ax-} \quad \text{bi-th\‘e-} \quad \text{l\‘ase} \)
   
   not- say-put- DUB
   
   neg: stem:cvs suffix:aspect-mood
   
   (he) probably did/will not name (him)

The formula for a compound verb stem is:

6. \( \text{cvs} = + \text{core}_1 + \text{core}_2 \)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{vr} & \quad \text{vr}
\end{align*}
\]

Many compound stems have \( r\!l\!- \) as second stem, as in (7-8), where it adds a continuative sense to the verb.

7. \([\text{kh}x\text{yo} \: \text{gxr\‘i-r\‘if} \: \text{mx\‘e \: m\‘a-b\‘a} \: \text{gxr\‘i}] \: \text{rq-} \quad \text{ri-} \quad [\text{na.}] \)
   
   place one-in cow Q_woman one graze- stay- DI
   
   core\(_1\):vr core\(_2\):vr
   
   [In one place (they) discovered an old cow] grazing.

8. \([\text{bxakh\‘ar} \: \text{gxe}] \: \text{th\‘y-} \quad \text{ri-} \quad [\text{b\‘ee kol-m\‘aq}] \)
   
   just_recently milk drink- stay- AJ child-PL
   
   core\(_1\):vr core\(_2\):vr
   
   [children just recently weaned from] drinking [milk]

When the stem in the first core slot is \( \text{ti-} \) 'stay, remain' the second stem is more frequently \( \text{qi-} \) than \( \text{ri-} \), as in (9).

9. \([\text{kkx}i-d \: \text{toi} \: \text{ax-bi-le}] \: \text{ti-} \quad \text{qi-} \quad [\text{d.}] \)
   
   you-TO what not-say-AV stay- stay IM
   
   core\(_1\):vr core\(_2\):vr
   
   [You, then,] remain there [silent].

I therefore posit that the continuative \( r\!l\!- \) is derived from
the root ʈːʰ- 'stay', with the ʈ changing to r in nonretroflex environments.\footnote{Another occurrence of ʈːʰ- is in imperative forms, giving a softening, or extra polite, effect:}

The derived loan verb stems (dlvs) have a formative -di attached to the borrowed Nepali root: N bīrā·u- G bīrī-di- 'omit'; N cha·a- G ca·i-di- 'need'; N ghum- G gχum-di- 'wander'. The formula for the derived stem is:

\begin{equation}
dlvs = + \text{core} + \text{deriver} \\
\text{loan root} -di
\end{equation}

The internal structure of derived loan stems is noted only in this section. Elsewhere in this study the derived stem is glossed as a single morpheme.

A number of stems occur with the gerund suffix -ba, and follow the same morphophonemic rules as verbs, but they do not occur with the full range of verb suffixes, and they are distributed syntactically as adjectives, and so I treat them as such (Sec. 5.4). swa·'-ba· 'pleasant' and chyą· '-ba· 'good' accept the negative prefix, giving ax-swa·'-ba 'unpleasant' and ax-chyą· '-ba 'bad', but others of the class, such as nō·-ba 'high, tall', and mō·-ba 'low, short', do not even accept the negative.

As fillers of the suffix slot in (3), the aspect-mood forms, listed in Table 5, mark independent clauses, the subordinator forms, listed in Table 6, mark subordinate clauses, and the -ba suffix marks a Gerund Clause (see Sec. 3.2, page 69). The forms in Table 6 are exemplified in the discussion of multiclausal sentences (Sec. 6.3), as the crossreferences in the table to relevant subsections show. A discussion of the aspect-mood suffixes (Table 5) follows here.

\begin{itemize}
    \item a. kxe-məq xya·r-饬 ḍ, qa li li kʰa-m.
        you-PL go-stay-IM RQ me after come-NP
        Don't be offended - you folk go on ahead, I'll come later.

It is not clear that this use can be related to the putative source of ʈːʰ- 'stay'.\footnote{Another occurrence of ʈːʰ- is in imperative forms, giving a softening, or extra polite, effect:}
The forms in Table 5, labelled 'aspect-mood', are in fact portmanteau of a number of categories, including tense and position in the sentence. Table 5 lists separately the indicative and hortatory forms. The former may be used in either declarative or interrogative sentences; the latter in sentences expressing a command or desire.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Abbr.</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-m</td>
<td>nonpast (final)</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>(11-2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mu/-my</td>
<td>nonpast (nonfinal)</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>(11-2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i/-i</td>
<td>past (final)</td>
<td>PA</td>
<td>(13-4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-di/-ji</td>
<td>past (nonfinal)</td>
<td>PA</td>
<td>(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ŋŋŋ'/-imu</td>
<td>state</td>
<td>STAT</td>
<td>(15-7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-na/-lạ</td>
<td>discovery</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>(18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-la/-lu</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
<td>PLUP</td>
<td>(21-3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e</td>
<td>questioning</td>
<td>QE</td>
<td>(24-5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lase</td>
<td>dubitative</td>
<td>DUB</td>
<td>(26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mala</td>
<td>unreal</td>
<td>UR</td>
<td>(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mala</td>
<td>past habituative</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>(28-9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-man/-maen</td>
<td>probabilitative</td>
<td>PROB</td>
<td>(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ba</td>
<td>gerund</td>
<td>GE</td>
<td>(31-3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-le</td>
<td>1st person plural</td>
<td>HO</td>
<td>(34-5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-d/-n/-si</td>
<td>2nd person (final)</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>(36-8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-du/-nu</td>
<td>2nd person (nonfinal)</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rge</td>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>LET</td>
<td>(39-40)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5. Aspect-mood suffixes.
Sec. 5.1

Table 6. Subordinator suffixes.

The final and nonfinal forms of nonpast and past indicative in Table 5 refer to a stylistic preference for the choice of form depending on the position in higher-level units, probably to be identified as paragraphs (page 154). I am not able to state the rule which expresses this stylistic preference. The explanation in terms of final/nonfinal position was offered by Deu Bahadur, and is supported by examples like (11) but countered by examples like (12). Both (11) and (12) were uttered by the one speaker in the same conversation.

11. U: ḍiuṭi mu-ya’, ḍiuṭi ti-ma, ḍiuṭi ax-ṣre-ya’, duty be-if duty sleep-NP duty not-be-if
   jamman ṛô-m. J: ... U: ṣ. mwxwa-r ṣxyo-m, all sleep-NP yes night-in watch-NP
   senima-mi. J: ... U: ṣ. hinduṣṭa-n-e philm cinema-EM yes India-of film
   kʰa-mu. kʰɔyɔ kʰɔyɔ gorkʰa-li kʰa-m. 'maʾitʰgΧAR' come-NP sometimes Nepali come-NP Maitighar
   kʰa-láʾ. J: ...
   come-PLUP
   U: If (you) have duty, (you) stay on duty. If there's no duty (you) all go to sleep. J: ...
   U: Yes. (We) watch at night, the cinema. J: ...
   U: Yes. Films of India come around. Sometimes Nepali (films) come. 'Maitighar' came. J: ...
12. U: hindů kxywi-m lu-l-1á tu-m. tǒndori
Hindi-language-TO learn-IN-EM NEC-NP everything
hindů kxywi-r-ná ta-mů. J: ...
Hindi language-TO-EM be-NP
U: (We) have to learn Hindi. Everything is in Hindi.
J: ...

The forms ́ti-mú and kʰa-mú in (11) and ta-mů in (12) illustrate the fluctuation of the nasal and oral vowels in the 'nonfinal nonpast' form. There does not appear to be any conditioning factor for the nasalization, and in the 963 occurrences of the morpheme in the concordance texts 466 have oral and 497 nasal vowels. The nasal/oral distinction of the 'final past' form -i/-i is, however, clearly conditioned by the nasality of the preceding vowel, as evidenced in (13).

13. pai-lá bxa-lú a-bá-e kaŋ mx-yq-į. 'oho cú-m
first bear father-of rice taste-PA oh this-TO
lála mu-ná-', bi-i.
hot be-DI say-PA
First (she) tasted Father Bear's rice. 'Oh, this is
hot!' (she) said.

The 'final past' -i, and 'nonfinal past' -di, are illustrated in (14).²

14. jxa·lé cá-r ́ti-na ́ti-n, pá·c batti-di, then that-at stay-PR stay-PR five strike-PA
ŋxe kí-báe txi-t xu-di, cá ka·ran, ŋa dخ-r
milk get-AJ time NEC-PA that reason me home-to kʰa-į.
come-PA
Then, (as I was) staying there a long time, (it) struck five, (and) it was time to get the milk, so I came home.

The form -ŋŋyú 'state' marks a continuing state

² The form -ji, listed in Table 5 as 'nonfinal past', occurs only in the speech of older people, and appears to represent a more conservative dialect than that of D and K. The same older speakers tend to use -syq' in place of D and K's -yq' 'if', and -si in place of D and K's -i 'conjunctive participle'. 
resulting from the action, and so is often translatable by the English perfect.

15. togó sammá: kaē ax-có-ŋŋyụ. 
   now until rice not-eat-STAT
   (I) haven't eaten rice yet.

16. phéři xyo-i tʰę-ŋŋyụ, ax-kʰá-do.
   again cook-PA put-STAT not-come-EM
   Again (I) cooked (his rice) and put (it ready), (but he didn't come!)

-ŋmu is synonymous with -ŋŋyụ, but is probably two morphemes:
   -i 'past' + mu 'be'.

17. kxi bya.  la-ʃ xwá?  la-ʃ-mu u ax-ʃ-i-mu?
   you wedding do-PA QE do-PA-be or not-do-PA-be
   You're married, aren't you? Married or not?

The form -na 'discovery' indicates a state that the speaker has discovered, often with an overtone of surprise, as in (18).

18. oho, kʰa-b, ŋá-e dxj-ř? ŋá-e kaē
   who come-PA me-of house-in me-of rice
   mxyq-wə'-na.
   taste-EM-DI
   Oho! Who has come, into my house? (They) have tasted my rice, I see!

-ŋq: is a stylistic variant of -na, as in (19), which was declared by D synonymous with the same sentence with -na.

19. makan sǐq, phéři, kalkada-ulé kʰa-ŋq:.
   Makan Sing again Calcutta-from come-DI
   Makan Sing arrived, back from Calcutta!

The form -na also occurs in the initial APERTURE of a NARRATIVE DISCOURSE (Sec. 8.1), describing, as it were, the state of things on the stage discovered when the curtain rises:

20. pailé ... cha-bae nà-sa gxri-ř, kʰib nē mà-bá
    first thus-AJ village one-in O-man with O_woman
    ŋxj-ř mu-nà.
    two be-DI
    Once upon a time ... in a certain village there was an old man and an old woman.
The 'pluperfect' form -la is used for events in a NARRATIVE DISCOURSE which took place prior to events in the main story of the narrative, which are marked with the plain 'past' forms -i/-i/-di:

21. 'dxeró kxè ca-d,' bi-i. kxè jamman ꞌnxə-ǵə now bread eat-IM say-PA bread all five-CL 
matré mu-ľá'. only be-PLUP

'Now eat the bread,' (she) said. In all, there were only five loaves.

In the speech of G and H, from more eastern villages, -lu is an alternative coexisting with -la 'pluperfect':

22. G: iskula ma-šṭara mu-ľú. ... 'bomwę' bi-ľu. 
school teacher be-PLUP Brahmin say-PLUP
ŋa-di, 'mxwę-pxrų-maę ꞌnxe-maalę, bi-la-', me-ER Brahmin-Chetri-PL be-PROB say-PLUP
bi-na-ga. say-DI-EM

G: There was a school teacher (here). ... 'A Brahmin,' (I) said. I said, '(He) is probably a Brahmin-Chetri', (I) said indeed.

The variation of -lu and -la appears to be related to stylistic factors I cannot at present account for, though it may be that -lu is another emphatic form, similar to -lau = -la + -au (Sec. 3.33). Speakers native to Ghacok use the -lu form particularly in 1st person response, as in (23).

you where go-PLUP me Pokhara go-PLUP

X: Where had you gone? Y: I went to Pokhara.

The 'questioning' form -e occurs only in nonpolar interrogatives (content questions) and suggests that the answer is difficult to give. Thus in (24) it is used in a rhetorical question reinforcing the statement 'I don't know'. 
Sec. 5.1

24. H: txoba mu-lá u momq- mu-lá?
   male be-PLUP or female be-PLUP
D: túsi-dí, txoba, momq-, tó mu-e.
   dunno-EM male female what be-QE
H: Was (it) a male, or was (it) a female?
D: Search me! Male, female, what could (it) have been?

25. D: nq·s-t благ-maq-át sá khāb khabá-l khanfá
   village-dwell-PL-TO wood who who-TO where
   fell-QE village-in wood not-fell one-year-in
D: As for the villagers, who can be felling timber
   where? I: (They) are not felling timber in the
   village, this year.

While the 'questioning' form -e is used in questions to convey doubt, the 'dubitative' -lase conveys doubt in statements, as in (26).³

26. W: cá kidá·bá, masina ba·rerá, mrq-{ u?
   that book Masina about see-PA or
D: ax-mrq-lase.
   not-see-DUB
W: Has (he) seen the book about Masina or (not)?
D: (He) probably hasn't seen (it).

-mala has two distinct meanings, and so I posit two homophous morphemes. The 'unreal' -mala occurs in the outcome clause (apodosis) of a hypothetical sentence, as in (27).

³Because of the complementary distribution of the forms it would be possible to regard them as being suppletive forms of the same morpheme. In fact, in an earlier analysis (Glover 1969b) I did so, but erroneously attributed the selection of -e to the presence of the verb stem mu-, which hypothesis is disproved by examples like (25). Because further investigation may reveal data making clear the semantic difference between the two suffixes, and/or falsify the complementary distribution hypothesis that -lase occurs only in statements and -e only in content questions, I prefer at this stage to describe the two suffixes as belonging to separate morphemes.
27. mā·bā asō rl-yā', ṇa sō ca-māla, mā·bā
0_woman before arise-if me three eat-UR 0_woman
ηx{ ca-māla.
two eat-UR
If the old woman gets up first, I will eat three
(loaves), the old woman will eat two.

The 'past habituative' -māla is illustrated in (28-9):

28. pailā rajistāri la-bā', mxwī gxrī mu-yā' ta-māla.
first register do-GE rupee one be-if OK-PH
Before, for registering (a letter), if there was
one rupee (in stamps) that used to be sufficient.

29. ba·jyu bxujyū-e pailō-ri lāma-d
grandfather grandmother-of turn-in lama-ER
pae ax-cxu-māla.
post_funeral_ceremony not-prepare-PH
In the time of our grandparents the lamas used not to
prepare the post-funeral ceremony.

The 'probabilitative' suffix -man/-maen is similar
semantically to -lase 'dubitative', but conveys a lesser
degree of uncertainty.

30. dx{ gxrī la-bā-r plash-n xya·-mān.
house one make-GE-in brick-TO many-EM go-PROB
As for bricks, much (money) indeed probably will go
(on them) in making a house.

When the 'gerund' suffix -ba is used in an independent
clause, it is neutral with respect to tense or aspect
distinctions, as in (31-3):

31. kḥab asō ri-mū, cā-di ηx{ ca-bā'. kḥab lili
who before rise-NP that-ER two eat-GE who after
ri-mū, cā-di sō ca-bā'.
rise-NP that-ER three eat-GE
Whoever gets up first, he will eat two; whoever
gets up last, he will eat three.

32. tō la-bā', ṭha·gū?
what do-GE eldest_son
What is to be done, Eldest Son?
33. cha ta-mó' kxé la-bá, txu-di, khé-la· ax-yó.
thus happen-PR work do-IN NEC-PA study-IN not-AVL
kxé la-bá·, mó thó-ba, phargu thó-ba, s{ thó-ba,
work do-GE cane cut-GE pole cut-GE wood cut-GE
s{ ka·r thu-bá·, ...
wood dry chop-GE

So, (I) had to work, and did not get to study.
Working, cutting cane, cutting poles, cutting timber, chopping dry wood, ...

The 'hortatory' form -le normally signifies 1st person inclusive plural, as in (34), but occasionally it has a singular (or 1st person exclusive, maybe) force, as in (35):

34. khíba-d bi-di, 'dzeró ró-le'.
O_man-ER say-PA now sleep-HO
The old man said, 'Let's go to bed now'.

35. khab-ase ax-xre-ná·, baidá·ra-i mu-lá·. 'khóí,
who-EM not-be-DI Baidara-EM be-PLUP well you-of
ka·gadá qxyo-le,' bi-i.
paper look-HO say-PA
Nobody was there, (except) Baidara. (He) said, 'Well, let (me) look at your paper.'

In the 2nd person hortatory, or 'imperative', forms the alternation of -d/-n is conditioned by the oral/nasal quality of the preceding stem vowel, as is the case with the 'final past' indicative forms -i/-i:

36. cê-d xa' la-má', 'thai-dú. togó ax-cá-d,'
tiger-ER snarl do-PR wait-IM now not-eat-IM
bi-i.
say-PA
As the tiger snarled, (the man) said, 'Wait! Don't eat (me) now!'

37. qa-lai cú khóra-ulé té-bx{\(-n.
me-DAT this trap-from release-give-IM
Release me from this trap, please. 4

4bx{\'- 'give' in a compound stem gives a benefactive sense with, in the imperative, a note of polite request.
The 'nonfinal' forms of the 2nd person hortatory, -du/-nu, are distributed similarly to the nonfinal indicative forms of the past, -di, and nonpast, -mu, (pages 111-2). Thus in (36) above -du occurs paragraph medial, and -d paragraph final.

The remaining 'imperative' form, -si, is used occasionally, apparently as a gentle request form, as in (38), where the speaker was correcting an adult's mispronunciation.

38. 'khe-маq-na khrú-m' bi-si. 'kxi' bi-b-dí.
   self-PL-EM wash-NP say-IM you say-GE-EM
   You should say 'khe-маq-na khrú-m'; (you) said 'kxi'.

The 3rd person hortatory form -rge expresses a wish, desire, or purpose.

39. pae la-bée maldab ya-ı, pae la-f birf si-bée mxı!
   PFC do-AJ meaning EM PFC do-CJ die-AJ person
   sörge phē-ne-rge.
   heaven reach-go-LET
   The reason for doing a post-funeral ceremony is so that, when (we) have done the ceremony, the person who has died will get to heaven.

40. 'sağ ramailó ta-rge' bi-si, kxwé prj-my.
   mind pleasant become-LET say-CJ song sing-NP
   Saying, 'Let (our) minds be happy', (they) sing songs.

5.2 Pronouns form a closed class, shown in Table 7.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st exclusive</td>
<td>ղա</td>
<td>ղի</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st inclusive</td>
<td>կեի</td>
<td>կեի-ունը</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>կեի</td>
<td>կե-մագ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd close</td>
<td>կու</td>
<td>կո-մագ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd remote</td>
<td>կա</td>
<td>կա-մագ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7. Pronouns.

The plural pronouns are occasionally followed by
jaga 'plural', which serves to emphasize the plural number:

41. camíri-e pʰa, karna', cá-maęż jaga, ta·n-au jaga, ... woman-of husband Karna this-PL PL all-EM PL
the woman's husband, Karna, these ones, all of them
indeed, ...

The most common 3rd person pronoun is the 'remote' form cá 'that'.

There are two reflexive pronouns, kʰi (with kʰe-maęż as the possessive and plural form) and xɾqsa. The two forms are interchangeable in most contexts, as illustrated in (42-3).

42a. xɾqsa bxanda cyq-bae ja·da
self than young-AJ caste

b. kʰi bxanda cyq-bae ja·da
self than young-AJ caste

a more junior (= lower) caste than oneself

43a. cá kʰe-maęż dx{ kʰa·bāe txi-ri pīḍi-ri ṭi-ᵻ.
that self-of house come-AJ time-in porch-on sit-PA

b. cá xɾqsa-e dx{ kʰa·bāe txi-ri pīḍi-ri ṭi-ᵻ.
that self-of house come-AJ time-in porch-on sit-PA

She, at the time of coming to (her) own house, sat on the porch.

In other contexts, kʰi acts as an anaphoric 3rd person pronoun, perhaps with an overtone of respect, while xɾqsa acts as an indefinite 3rd person pronoun, 'one':

\{*xɾqsa\}

44. mxa·ga-r \{ kʰe-maęż\} bxa·ráda xyá·b ro.
Magh-in that-PL India go-GE QO
They are going to India in Magh, they say.
\{*kʰi-lai\}

45. \{ xɾqsa-lai \} tó tó caidi-mű sama·n-jaú kî-d-ôn.
one-DAT what what needed-NP goods-PL buy-PA-EM
Whatever was needed for oneself, (one) bought those goods indeed.

The difference is thus a matter of definiteness of the referent of the pronoun: definite for kʰi, indefinite for xɾqsa.
5.3 Nouns. There is no morphological criterion common to all nouns in Gurung - they are defined distributionally, as the class filling the Head slot of Modified Noun Phrases (Sec. 4.11). Proper nouns (npr), however, reject all other slots in the Modified Noun Phrase, because a proper noun has a unique referent, semantically, being the name of an individual such as karna· 'Karna'. The same lexical item can of course function as a common noun, allowing other slots in the Modified Noun Phrase, precisely when there is no unique referent:

46. kʰab karna· bxa·dur?
which karna Bahadur
Sp:pron H:n
Which Karna Bahadur?

A subclass of nouns, 'count noun', is defined by potential of co-occurrence in the Modified Noun Phrase with a Number slot. A further subgroup of this class, namely 'personal noun', is defined by the potential of feminine suffixation, as in (47).

47. personal noun = + stem ↑ feminine
   nr -syo
dpns

The stem of a personal noun may be filled either by a noun root (nr) or a derived personal noun stem (dpns), which has the structure of (48):

48. dpns = + core + personalizer
   nloc -θq

The class of locative nouns filling the core slot consists only of village names plus the interrogative kʰan- 'where', as in (49).

49. [ŋa-e a·ba·] kajú- thq, [tara pailé-ba]
me-of father Ghacok native but before-GE
core:nloc perzr:-thq
kʰan- thq mu-i.
where native be-GE
core:nloc perzr:-thq

[My father (was)] a native of Ghacok, [but (the ones) before (him)] - where could they have come from?
There are two plural markers, -maq and jaga, which often is reduced to -jau. Konow (in Grierson 1967/1909:183) ascribed maq 'many' and jaga 'all' distinct glosses, but I have not been able to discover any such semantic distinction in Ghacok usage, although jaga is used synonymously with ta'n 'all', as an emphatic, as in (41) above. However, potential of occurrence with the two plural markers jaga and -maq divides Gurung nouns into four classes, as in Table 8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>With -maq</th>
<th>With jaga</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Personal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. kxr9-syo</td>
<td>-maq</td>
<td>-kxr9-syo jaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headman-FEM</td>
<td>headman-FEM-PL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'headman's wife'</td>
<td>'headmen's wives'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Animate nonpersonal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. thu</td>
<td>-maq</td>
<td>thu jaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
<td>friend-PL</td>
<td>friend PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'friend'</td>
<td>'friends'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Count inanimate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. dxj</td>
<td>-maq</td>
<td>dxj jaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>house PL</td>
<td>'houses'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'house'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mass</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. kyú</td>
<td>-maq</td>
<td>kyú jaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'water'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8. Noun classes defined by plural markers.

5 I regard -maq and -jau as suffixes rather than separate words on phonological grounds. Morphophonemic processes similar, but not, I think, identical, to those
Rather than set up four noun classes that would need to be listed in all formulae, I state the stem filler in (47) simply as 'noun root' and note the restriction informally (and in semantic terms): -maq occurs only with animate nouns, jaga occurs with both animate and inanimate nouns except for those animate nouns which may be suffixed for feminine gender.\(^6\)

Plural number is not obligatorily marked in Gurung, even when the referent is plural in number, as in (50), which could signify that a single guest or a party has arrived.

50. \(pxr\ qha\-f.\)  
\(\text{guest come-PF}\)  
Guest(s) have come.

51. \(r\ c\-ba\-r\ xya\-m.\)  
\(\text{goat shepherd-GE-to go-NP}\)  
(I) am going to shepherd the goats.

5.4 Adjectives. Adjectives fall into two classes by structure: simple (consisting only of a root), and derived (having the gerund suffix -ba). Derived adjectives have some very limited features of verbs, as described in Sec. 5.1. The two classes are united by their characteristic distribution in the Head slot of Adjunct Phrases (Sec. 4.31) which are distributed in the Modifier slot of Modified Noun Phrases (Sec. 4.11) and in the Complement slot of Complement Verb Phrase (Sec. 4.21).

One subclass of simple adjectives contains the five indigenous colour terms: \(\text{ta-r-gya} 'white', \text{mi-q-gya} 'black', \text{ur-gya} 'yellow', \text{pj-gya} 'green', \text{and ol-gya} 'red'. \) They described for verbs in the 'Guide to Orthography' condition the tone on noun suffixes, but not on jaga, which is thus a separate word.

\(^6\)The restrictions could be formalized, for the purposes of the 'personal noun' formula, (47), and the Modified Noun Phrase formula in Sec. 4.11, by specifying every noun as \([\pm \text{count}][\pm \text{animate}][\pm \text{personal}]. \) Frantz (1971:35) shows the superiority of a syntactic feature approach over a multiplicity of subclasses.
share the 'colour marker' -gya· (with an accent in the case of ol-gya·). 7

5.5 Numerals. The closed class of indigenous numerals includes the set from ḡxī 'two' to kú 'nine' (listed in Sec. 4.32). ḡxrī 'one', cyú 'ten',}pxrá 'hundred', and the loanword hájar 'thousand' (N haja·r) combine with the set in building indigenous Number Phrases (Sec. 4.32).

Borrowed Nepali numerals supplant the indigenous number expressions in various loan phrases, such as das baje 'ten o'clock', in the range 'eleven' to 'nineteen', 8 and in a number of other contexts, especially 25, 35, ...

5.6 Postpositions. Postpositions, or case-marking particles, are defined distributionally as the class filling the Relator slot of Axis-relator Noun Phrases (Sec. 4.1), and are listed in Table 3 of Section 3.2. Phonologically most of them are clitics, shown with hyphens in the table. Semantically, the class ranges from rather abstract relational markers such as -di 'ergative' and -lai 'dative' to concrete positional notions such as phirī 'upon' and osq 'in front of'. Some of the items in the class of postpositions are morphemically complex, such as (52),

52. -e lxa·gi-ri
    of sake-in

but they act as single lexical elements, as shown by the fact

7 It is possible that pi-gya· originally covered a wider range of colours, including many shades of blue, but today the loanword nīra· 'blue', from Nepali nīro, has for most purposes supplanted pi-gya· in that area. Similarly the borrowing of khāirē 'brown', from Nepali khāiro, has restricted the semantic range of ur-gya· to, roughly, 'yellow'.

8 Burton-Page (1955:114) cites forms for 'twelve' and 'seventeen' (which he treated as an homophonous pair cuνi), but I have been unable to obtain any indigenous number expression in the range 'eleven' to 'nineteen'.

that some of their component morphemes do not occur elsewhere. Thus $\text{xá·gí}$ is identified as a morpheme by analysis of (52), and because of its recognition as a borrowing (N $\text{lá·gí} \text{ 'sake'}$), but in Gurung it occurs only in this expression. In treating (52) as a single element filling the Relator slot I avoid the analysis of (53) which would make the first immediate constituent cut after $\text{xá·gí}$- instead of, as shown, after $\text{γa}$-.

The analysis shown is to be preferred because the expression -e $\text{xá·gí} \text{'for'}$ is significant as a unit in clause structure, marking a participant.  

53. $\text{γá-} \quad \text{e} \quad \text{xá·gí-rí} \quad \text{me-}$  
Axis: pronoun Relator: case  
for me

5.7 Conjunctions are defined as the class filling Link slots at phrase, sentence, paragraph, and discourse levels. Table 9 lists the common conjunctions, each with its relevant level - P(phrase), S(entence), P(agraph), D(iscourse) - and subsection.

As with the postpositions, a number of the expressions listed as conjunctions are morphemically complex, and exhibit various internal structures. $\text{jxá·-lé} \text{'there-from'}$ is an Axis-relator phrase (Sec. 4.1); $\text{ax-ŋx} \text{'not-be'}$ is a verb with negative prefix (Sec. 5.1); $\text{tíle biyq·} \text{'why say-if'}$, $\text{cha ta-si} \text{'thus happen-CJ'}$, and $\text{cha ta-má} \text{'thus happen-PR'}$ are all subordinate clauses (Sec. 3.2). However I list them as conjunctions because they have the same function, of linkage, and because to list each of these various constructions as possible fillers of the Link slot would not generate the very limited number of lexical expressions actually used as Links.

9 English, of course, also has a number of morphemically complex relators: $\text{in front of, beside, before, behind.}$

10 Although the formulae for paragraphs and discourses do not show them explicitly, the linking particles are diagnostic of discourse and paragraph level constituents (Sec. 7.1).
Table 9. Conjunctions at various levels.

5.8 Emphatic particles. In colloquial Gurung, especially in conversation, emphatic particles as listed in Section 3.3 occur frequently. It is very difficult to attach a meaning accurately to each member of the set, or to give a unified treatment, but I have glossed them throughout at 'emphatic (EM)' (Sec. 3.33), except for the cases where -m, -la, and -di, glossed 'topic (TO)', signal change of topic (Section 3.32). They are probably all best regarded as clitics, in that they do not occur as free forms (although I have written ya and ga after word space in examples because of their predicate-like grammatical function). The particles are not suffixes, that is, word constituents, because they may attach to any word in a sentence to which emphasis is given, whether it be verb, noun, pronoun, or whatever.

5.9 Adverbs are a very heterogeneous class in traditional grammar. I recognize three classes in Gurung: manner adverbials (av), adverbs of degree (deg), and sentence adverbials (sa).
5.91 Manner adverbials (av) are defined as the fillers of the Manner slot in clauses. Some members of the class are morphemically simple, such as yúmnan 'quickly', but there is a productive adverbializer suffix -le, which generates manner adverbials according to the formula (54):

\[
\text{av} = \text{+ core} + \text{adverbializer}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{noun root} & \quad -\text{le} \\
\text{verb root} & \\
\text{adjective root}
\end{align*}
\]

Examples of manner adverbials with the various fillers of the core slot are:

55. \[\text{ba·bu rá·m-e dx[-r]} \quad \text{ðera- le} \quad [\text{ti-ŋyŋ}].\]
    Babu Ram-of house-in lodging-AV stay-STAT
    \[\text{core:nr avzr: -le}\]
    [(He) is living in Babu Ram's house] as rented quarters.

56. \[\text{xr̥sa-e dx[-r]} \quad \text{syó- le} \quad [\text{ti-l txu-m}],\]
    self-of house-in separate-AV stay-IN NEC-NP
    \[\text{core:vr avzr: -le}\]
    \[\text{cokhō- le} \quad [\text{ti-l txu-m}].\]
    pure-AV stay-IN NEC-NP
    \[\text{core:ajr avzr: -le}\]
    [(One) must stay in one's own house,] separately, untainted (by normal contacts).

There are many manner adverbials which end in the syllable -le but of which the stem does not occur elsewhere in the language, such as núji-le 'slowly' and chen-le 'well' (though this is quite likely derived from chyq·-ba· 'good').

5.92 Adverbs of degree (deg) are fillers of the Modifier slot in Adjunct Phrases (Sec. 4.31). The class consists of té 'a little', bele 'very', beseri 'very', sa·rón 'extremely', khub 'extremely'.

5.93 Sentence adverbials (sa) are free forms modifying a whole sentence by expressing the speaker's attitude to the predication made. A similar function is fulfilled by some of the verb affixes signalling aspect-mood, listed in Table 5 (Sec. 5.1). (See the discussion of modality in
Sec. 5.9-(10) 127

Sec. 6.22). Only two free form sentence adverbials have been identified: kxrosxéná 'honestly', and mà·rí 'indeed', as in (57-8).

57. mà·rí cá nesá-ri chámadá cxya·-si só·kyo
indeed that evening-in dagger grasp-CJ three-time
pr[[-ma tulú bxj-ñá ro.
strike-PR death give-DI QO
Indeed, that evening (she) took a dagger and, striking (her) three times, murdered her.

58. kxrosxéná· ṇa-d syura· ax-تخÉ.
honestly me-ER lie not-utter
Honestly, I am not lying.

Sa·yad 'perhaps' is possibly another member of the class, but it is a relatively unassimilated Nepali loanword, occurring only in speech heavily influenced by Nepali. The sense of uncertainty it conveys is expressed in natural Gurung by the verb suffixes -man 'probabilitative' or -laše 'dubitative'.

5.(10) Temporals (t) are a class of roots filling the Temporal slot of a clause:¹¹ ylim [ 'day before yesterday', telá· 'yesterday', tiyå· 'today', pxanxå·ga 'tomorrow', nýima· 'day after tomorrow', togó 'now', dxeró 'now; henceforth'. Temporals may also fill the Axis slot of an Axis-relator Phrase with the postpositions sammá· 'until' or seró 'since':

59. pxanxå·ga seró
tomorrow since
A:ţ R:Seró
60. togó sammá·
now until
A:ţ R:Sammá·

With the suffix -dú, pxanxå·ga and nýima· shift their point of

¹¹The other common filler of Temporal slots in clauses are Axis-relator Phrases:

a. cá txi-ri
that time-in
then, at that time
b. xya·-båe sá·la-ri
going year-in
last year
reference to the time of the narrative:

61. pxanxə'g-dû
    tomorrow-following
    the next day
6.1 Definition of a sentence. A sentence in Gurung, as a level of the grammatical hierarchy, is a stretch of speech, which contains one or more clauses, which has a final intonation pattern, and which can stand alone as an acceptable utterance.

The definition excludes, following Franklin (1971:102), nonclausal fragmentary portions of speech such as vocatives and exclamations which Bloomfield (1933:171) described as 'minor sentences'. His definition of minor sentences is apparently motivated at least in part by the view of sentence as the most inclusive linguistic unit, and the allied assumption that a text must be completely accounted for at the level of sentence. However I view sentence as an intermediate level in the grammatical hierarchy and so do not accept the requirement of total partitioning at the sentence level. Fragments which stand alone in dialogue such as exclamations (chya 'disgusting!'), vocatives (ó khjba 'Hey, old man!'), or responses (xwé 'yes [acknowledging a call]'), are roots or phrases, not sentences, filling discourse-level slots (Sec. 8.).

Sentence is distinguished from clause firstly by the potential within a sentence of combinations of clauses in patterns that are not describable as clause-within-clause, such as Not by men was the damage done, but the river did it and Although time was short, we had to travel slowly. These compound and complex sentences encode sememic relations of the statement level (Sec. 2.3)." Secondly, sentences are

---

1 Blansitt (1970) denies that clause and sentence are two significant levels of description - he regards the data all as clauses, with recursive embedding as necessary. However this view requires that clause constructions, typically the domain of sememic relations of the role level (Sec. 2.1), incorporate also the radically different relations of the statement level.
distinguished by the presence, explicit or understood, of an independent clause. The sememically implicit independent clause may be deleted from the grammatical structure of a multiclausal sentence in cases where it is inferred from context, as is often the case in the response slot in dialogue: X: *Can I have lunch now?* Y: *If you've washed your hands.* Thirdly, sentence is distinguished from clause in that it has a mood associated with it, realized particularly by the intonation contour, and may also have a modality, marked by a clitic or sentence adverbial (Sec. 6.2).

At sentence level, as at other levels, the distinction of nucleus versus periphery is relevant to classification of types as the nucleus of a syntagmeme is the characteristic (contrastive) portion of the pattern, whereas the periphery includes tagmemes which occur indifferently with all types. A general formula for sentence is:

\[ S = \pm \text{Periphery} + \text{Nucleus} + \text{Mood} + \text{Modality} \]

The formula may not represent the actual order in a sentence, though, as Periphery may come at the end (as with Final Comment or a postposed Vocative), Mood is marked chiefly by the suprasegmental feature of intonation, and Modality largely by portmanteau suffixes on the verb.

Sec. 6.2 takes up the features of Mood and Modality, Sec. 6.3 describes the various contrastive Nuclei of Gurung sentence types, and Sec. 6.4 discusses the tagmemes of the sentence Periphery.

6.2 Mood and modality are systems relating the lexical content of a sentence to the situational context in which it occurs.\(^2\) Although writers such as Elson and Pickett

\(^2\)Austin Hale described seven systems comprising a 'verbal link' whose function is to relate 'the verb stem a) to the rest of the clause, and b) to the context in which the clause occurs, both linguistic and situational (performative)' (1972b:1). I draw on Hale's discussion, but view the two systems of mood and modality as more relevant to the level of sentence than clause.
Sec. 6.2

(1962:24) and Lyons (1968:307-9) have not distinguished separate systems in the area of mood and modality, I do so for Gurung because they are realized in partially distinct formal ways (mood by intonation, clause-level tagmemes, and verb suffixes, and modality by sentence adverbials, clitics such as ro, and also by verb suffixes). Also, a sentence must manifest a member of the mood system, but there may not be any overtly marked modality. Nevertheless, the two systems are interdependent, and the modalities described, in Sec. 6.22, apply only to sentences in the declarative mood.

6.21 Mood and intonation. The definition of sentence given above refers to final intonation. Four different final intonation patterns formally characterize the following four moods in Gurung, which are sememically identified with the performative shown after each in parentheses:

a) declarative ('I hereby declare to you that ...')
b) imperative ('I hereby command that ...')
c) polar interrogative ('I hereby ask you to confirm whether ...')
d) nonpolar interrogative ('I hereby ask you to inform me ...')

The four moods are distinguished formally also by the verb forms employed, by the choice of lexical items, and, by their external distribution - each occurring in contexts appropriate to the particular performative. The formal differences are illustrated in (1-4), manifesting respectively declarative, imperative, polar interrogative, and nonpolar interrogative.

1. café paisá píñ.
   him-DAT money give-PA
   (I) gave him money.

2. café paisá píñ!
   him-DAT money give-IM
   Give him money!
Sec. 6.2

3a. cá-lai pálsá̄ pij-? xwā-?
   him-DAT money give-PA QE
   Did (you) give him money?

b. cá-lai pálsá̄ pij-? u ax-pj?
   him-DAT money give-PA or not-give
   Did (you) give him money or not?

4a. khāb-lai pálsá̄ pij-?
   who-DAT money give-PA
   To whom did (you) give (the) money?

b. cá-lai tô pij-?
   him-DAT what give-PA
   What did (you) give him?

The grammatical and lexical differences form a background for discussing the intonational contrasts. The imperative mood, (2), employs the hortatory suffixes on the verb (Table 5, p. 110).

The polar interrogative, or 'Yes-No' question, (3), has following the predicate a question marker xwā-, a-, or u. xwā- occurs quite generally; a- has a somewhat more tentative or polite flavour than xwā- and is restricted phonologically in that it does not follow a vowel (and so could not be substituted in (3a) for xwā-); and u 'or' is restricted normally to follow positive forms of the verb, in which case it is often followed, as in (3b), by the negative form.

Even though a sentence may lack any of the three markers it may still be marked as polar interrogative by the characteristic rising intonation on the final syllable.

The nonpolar interrogative, or content question, (4), has a question word in one of the clause level tagmemes. Interestingly, most of the question words share the phonological feature of an initial kh- (compare the WH-series in English): khāb 'who, whom; which', khāi- 'how', khānī 'where', khāqq 'when', khābāla 'whose', but also tô 'what' and tāle 'why' (which is transparently derivable
Final intonation consists characteristically of a marked downdrift over the phonological phrase, but the nondeclarative moods exhibit a nucleus, or peak, of the intonation contour - the four moods contrast intonationally in the existence and placement of the nucleus. Under normal conditions the nucleus is found as follows: the declarative mood has no 'extra high' nucleus; the imperative mood has as its nucleus the predicate; the polar interrogative has as nucleus the interrogative particle or, if no particle occurs, the final syllable; the nonpolar interrogative has as nucleus the question word. Where the morpheme so designated for the imperative or nonpolar interrogative nucleus is polysyllabic the intonational peak occurs on the first syllable of the morpheme.

In discussing intonational contours it is necessary to recognize three independent but interacting processes. Firstly, within a word the pitch of a syllable is determined as phonetically high, mid, or low by the position of the syllable in the word, the presence of breathiness and/or accent, and the voicing of any word-initial stop (as outlined in the 'Guide to Orthography', p. xiii). Secondly, associated with final intonation there is over a phonological phrase (and each of the utterances in (1-4) above is a single phonological phrase) a downdrift of all three phonetic levels, but with 'high' drifting more than 'mid', and 'mid' more than 'low', with the result that toward the end of the phonological phrase the three levels have been collapsed much closer together in pitch. Thirdly, the nucleus of a nondeclarative intonation contour carries an 'extra high' pitch in place of its lexically determined level. The

---

3One consequence of this collapsing of levels is that in a study of lexical pitch, such as described in Glover (1969a), frame sentences must be sought with several syllables following the substitution point before the juncture of the phonological phrase, to preserve a good range of phonetic difference between the three levels at the substitution point.
nucleus is, of course, 'extra high' not absolutely but relative to the particular place in the contour - that is, it is still subject to the phrasal downdrift associated with final intonation.

The above specification for the intonational nucleus is the normal, or unmarked, condition for each of the four moods, and is illustrated in examples (1-4) above. In marked variants any morpheme may be given special prominence, in which case the first syllable of that morpheme takes the intonational peak of 'extra high' pitch, together with lengthening and stress (Glover 1969a:36). The unmarked nucleus of a nondeclarative contour is then relatively less prominent, though it is still 'extra high' relative to its particular position in the phrase contour. Thus (5) is an unmarked nonpolar interrogative, with nucleus on the question word kʰʌnɪ 'where', while (6) is a marked variant with emphasis on kxi 'you'. As the nucleus of (6) kxi 'you', is lexically 'low' in pitch, but takes on 'extra high' pitch.

5. kxi kʰʌnɪ xyaː-í?
   you where go-PA
   Where did you go?

6. kxi-ði kʰʌnɪ xyaː-í?
   you-TO where go-PA
   You, where did you go?

Mood is here regarded as appropriate to the sentence level, not the clause as proposed by Longacre (1967), because the intonational contour, which is the most characteristic

---

4 In a paradigm of forms one form can usefully be regarded as the neutral, or unmarked, member when the other (marked) members of the paradigm can be derived from it by the addition of some feature - in this case the selection of a particular morpheme for special prominence. For English, paradigms, for each of three moods, of unmarked and marked theme and unmarked and marked intonation centres are given by Grimes (1972b:334-8), adapted from Halliday (1967).
feature of a particular mood, occurs only once on a sentence, namely on the final independent clause not following the interrogative particle u. Constituents following the determinant clause are low in pitch and intensity. Other clauses, or fragments less than grammatical clauses but partitioned as separate phonological phrases, are marked as nonfinal by an intonation contour rising on the last syllable (Glover 1969a:35). Hence mood, marked phonologically by final intonation contour and grammatically by forms of the independent verb, is a feature of sentence level, not clause level.

The qualification above, 'not following the interrogative particle u', refers to the fact that in polar interrogatives with u everything following the nucleus u trails off on low pitch and low intensity, as in (3b) above and (7). The unity of the intonation contour indicates that the whole sentence is treated as a polar interrogative, although of course (7) is not logically a polar choice.

7. kxi-m ka·ṭh'ma·n̄ḡu-r źi-b swa·-'ḅā· u kajú-r
   you-TO Kathmandu-in stay-GE pleasant-GE or Ghacok-in źi-b swa·-'ḅā·?
   stay-GE pleasant-GE
For you, is it pleasant to live in Kathmandu or pleasant to live in Ghacok?

6.22 Modality is defined here, following Hale (1972b), to include those markers in Gurung which indicate the non-actual nature of the action or state named (such as hypothetical, nonoccurring, or potential markers) and markers which indicate the speaker's commitment to the truth of the predication (such as indications of reported speech, uncertainty, or likelihood). Many of the verb suffixes described in Chapter 5 signal semantic features which fall into the modality system so defined. Thus -man signals the speaker's belief that what he says is probably true, -lase
that what he says is doubtful (though possible), -e that he makes no commitment at all to its truth, and -mala that the statement is hypothetical, and usually contrary to fact. These suffixes may be thought of as on a scale of truth-falsity, as also the sentence adverbials kxrosxené 'honestly' and mərə 'indeed' (Sec. 5.93).

On the same scale, perhaps, is the clitic ro which is a device for indirect quotation (J. Glover 1971a:2), syntactically contrasting with the Margin for direct quotation bi-i only in the selection of pronouns:

8. kʰe-məq nəsə-r xyā'-m ro. 3rd_reflexive-PL village-to go-NP QO (He/She/They) said (they) are going to their own village.

9. nəf-e nəsə-r xyā'-m bi-i. we-of village-to go-NP say-PA '(We) are going to our village,' (they) said.

The contrast between the two devices is also a matter of communicative function, however. The function of ro is to convey the information but to deny personal responsibility for the truth or falsity. The identity of the source is not in focus - it may be a named participant, as in the text from which (8) comes, or a general body of accepted belief, as in (10).

10. pæ ax-lá-n sammā· ca-bāe sāe mxæe-ba-ri PFC not-do-IN until eat-AJ thing seek-GE-to pxra-m ro. walk-NP QO

Until (one) does the post-funeral ceremony (the ghost) walks, seeking food, it is said.

Thus in (11) the bi-i form, identifying the source of the information, is used to strengthen a statement that has been questioned.
Another modality scale evident in Gurung is that of 'surprise'. It was noted in Sec. 5.1 that the suffixes -na and -la 'discovery aspect' conveyed an overtone of surprise in the speaker's comment on something he has just discovered. The addition of a particle mae heightens the note of surprise:

   enlistment happen-PA QO

   W: bxā·rāda-ɾ′ xyā·-ɾ xwā·ʔ
   India-to go-PA QE

   D: lā·ure ta-i rō, m̄′ma-d′ bi-i.
   soldier become-PA QO uncle-ER say-PA

   D: (He) has enlisted, (they) say.

   W: (He) went to India, did he?

   D: (He) became a soldier, (they) say; Uncle said (so).

6.3 Sentence types in Gurung. In classifying Gurung sentence nuclei by their grammatical structure I shall use the following criteria:

a) Constituency of the nucleus. A simple sentence has in its nucleus a single Base slot (B) filled by an independent clause; compound sentences co-ordinate independent clauses in separate Bases; complex sentences subordinate clauses

---

5 I am indebted to Ray Christmas for helpful comments in this area, based on his work in the 1971-2 Pike workshops in India and Nepal (Trail 1973). I have also drawn on Maria Hari's work on Nepali sentences (1972).
b) Method of linking clauses within compound sentences: overt conjunction, referentially identical particles, or parataxis. (Complex sentences are linked in only one way - by the particle suffixed to the subordinate clause.)

c) Potential for expansion beyond two clauses.

These three criteria lead to a taxonomic tree of eight grammatical sentence types (Fig. 15, page 139). Some of the types have a number of subtypes listed, differentiated according to the particular lexical conjunction employed as overt link, or according to constraints on the internal structure of component clauses in paratactically linked compound sentences. Concession and Condition Sentences (variants of the binary complex sentence) have further subvariants according to the internal structure of the apodosis clause, as shown in Fig. 16 (page 146).

The complex and compound sentences encode semantic relations of the statement level as shown in Table 10 (page 140), which gives references to the subsections in the discussion of the statement level relations in Sec. 2.3, and to examples in this section, many of which are repeated from Chapter 2.

---

6 The notions of co-ordination in a compound sentence and subordination in a complex sentence are primary in Wise and Green's treatment (1971:270) of the surface structure of sentences in Palikur.
Fig. 15. Taxonomic tree of Gurung grammatical sentence types.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grammatical type</th>
<th>Sememic relation</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Ex.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.32 Binary Paratactic Compound Sentence</td>
<td>Antithesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negated antonym</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>(16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paraphrase</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>(17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Equivalence</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>(18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Generic-specific</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.33 Multiple Paratactic Compound Sentence</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Collection</td>
<td>2.31(1)</td>
<td>(21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partitive contrast</td>
<td>2.31(2)</td>
<td>(22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.34 Referentially Linked Compound Sentence</td>
<td>Equivalence</td>
<td>2.33(1)</td>
<td>(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.35 Binary Conjoined Compound Sentence</td>
<td>Adversive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Factual definite</td>
<td>2.33(5)</td>
<td>(26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concession</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inversion</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reason</td>
<td>2.33(4)</td>
<td>(28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Emphatic</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>(29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alternation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.36 Multiple Conjoined Compound Sentence</td>
<td>Alternation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exclusive disjunction</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>(31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.37 Binary Complex Sentence</td>
<td>Concession</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypothetical concession</td>
<td>2.33(2)</td>
<td>(33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Factual concession</td>
<td>2.33(5)</td>
<td>(34)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contrafactual concession</td>
<td>2.33(8)</td>
<td>(35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Condition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypothetical condition</td>
<td>2.33(1)</td>
<td>(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contrafactual condition</td>
<td>2.33(7)</td>
<td>(37)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10. Encoding potential of multiclausal sentences (contd. next page).
Sec. 6.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grammatical type</th>
<th>Sememic relation</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Ex.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Result</td>
<td>Factual condition</td>
<td>2.33(4)</td>
<td>(38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Factual condition</td>
<td>2.33(4)</td>
<td>(39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concurrent</td>
<td>Temporal overlap</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate sequel</td>
<td>Temporal succession</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>(41)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.38 Multiple Complex Sentence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Sememic relation</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Ex.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Temporal succession</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>(42-3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Temporal overlap</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>(44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Factual condition</td>
<td>2.33(4)</td>
<td>(45)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10. Encoding potential of multiclausal sentences

(contd. from previous page).

6.31 Simple Sentences have a single slot in the nucleus, a base filled by an independent clause, as exemplified in (14).

14. แปลก sada-r ยกับ q t xwá', yesterday-AJ week-in go-GE QE
Base:indCl Mood:interr


Going a week from yesterday, are (we), Mother-of-Surje?

Since Simple Sentences have only a single slot in the nucleus, they do not exhibit any relation of the sememic statement level. 7

7 Franklin (1971:102) notes that a Simple Sentence adds no new functional notion ('sememic function' in the terminology of this study) to that of the independent clause filling its Base slot.
6.32 The Binary Paratactic Compound Sentence \([B + B]\) has two Bases each filled by an independent clause, without any overt grammatical link but with the phonological link of nonfinal intonation on the first clause, final on the second. The formula (15), as with the remaining formulae and examples in this section, refers only to the Nucleus of the sentences:

\[
S_{\text{paratactic binary}} = + \text{Base}_1 \quad + \text{Base}_2
\]

The two subtypes, Antithesis and Paraphrase, are distinguished in that the Predicate slot of one of the Bases of Antithesis, in (16), has a negative verb phrase which is a negated antonym of the Predicate in the other Base, while the Predicates of both Bases in a Paraphrase Sentence are filled by affirmative verb phrases, in (17-9).

16. \(\text{paxaj} \text{-d} \text{pxra} \text{-l} \text{a-x-txu, base}-\text{r} \text{xya}-\text{-l} \text{a } \gamma{g}-\text{my}.\) 
   foot-ER walk-IN not-NEC bus-in go-IN AVL-NP 
   Base\(_1\):indCl Base\(_2\):indCl

It isn't necessary to walk, (you) can go by bus.

17. \(\text{khqyq} \text{khqyq} \text{t}-\text{j} \text{nxj} \text{-ji bi-my, carg} \text{-p}-\text{my.} \) 
   sometimes one-CL two-CL say-NP sharp speak-NP 
   Base\(_1\):indCl Base\(_2\):indCl

Sometimes (he) says short words, (he) speaks sharply.

18. \(\text{taj} \text{ta}-\text{i bir} \text{f}, '\text{o}, \text{ta}-\text{m sidf},' \text{bi-i bir} \text{f, ...} \) 
   word happen-CJ yes OK-NP certainly say-CJ 
   Base\(_1\):depCl Base\(_2\):depCl

After having a conversation, after saying, 'Yes, OK', ...

19. \(\text{ca-maq-d p}-\text{i}, \text{caxa}-\text{laai p}-\text{di}. \) 
   that-PL-ER give-PA daughter-DAT give-PA 
   Base\(_1\):indCl Base\(_2\):indCl

They gave, gave the daughter (in marriage).

---

8If the compound sentence is itself embedded as a Margin in another sentence, as is the case in (18), the Bases actually have dependent clause marking.
6.33 The Multiple Paratactic Compound Sentence \([B \pm B^n + B]\) consists of potentially more than two Bases, each filled by an independent clause, as in (20).

\[
S_{paratactic\ multiple} = + \text{Base}_1 \pm \text{Base}_2^n + \text{Base}_3
\]

The one subtype, Enumeration, is exemplified in (21-2).

\[
\text{bele } \{\text{-bae sée ca-l yq-mų, swa.'llé ch'ya.'-báe very tasty-AJ thing eat-IN AVL-NP extremely good-AJ Base}_1: \text{indCl} \}
\]

kwė kwė kwė, ta'n kʰlxyo base-r' xya.'-lá yq-mų. cloth wear-IN AVL-NP all place bus-in go-IN AVL-NP

\[
\text{Base}_2: \text{indCl}
\]

(One) gets to eat very nice food, (one) gets to wear extremely good clothes, (one) can go everywhere by bus.

\[
\text{[ŋa-m] kʰɔyq se } kʰɔyq \text{ tʃa.' tʃu jaga me-TO sometimes meat buy-GE sometimes vegetable PL Base}_1: \text{indCl} \}
\]

kj-bxa-bá kʰɔyq póṣt a·phis xya.'-bá. buy-bring-GE sometimes post office go-GE

\[
\text{Base}_3: \text{indCl}
\]

[As for me,] sometimes (I) get meat, sometimes (I) get vegetables, sometimes (I) go to the post office.

6.34 The Referentially Linked Compound Sentence \([B_x + B_x]\) has two Bases filled by clauses with independent verb forms but with an indefinite particle in the clause filling the first Base and, in the clause filling the second Base, an anaphoric particle referring back to the indefinite particle. The concord of reference between the two clauses is symbolized in (23) by a subscribed \(x\).

\[
S_{ref} = + \text{Base}_1 + \text{Base}_2
\]

The one subtype is the Equivalence Sentence (called such after Hari 1972:46):

\[
\]
Sec. 6.3

24. \(kh\hat{a}b\ as\hat{o}\ ri-m\dot{u},\ ca-d\i\ \eta x\{\ ca-b\acute{a}\). \)
whoever before rise-NP that-ER two eat-GE
Base\(_1\):indCl \(x\) Base\(_2\):indCl \(x\)

Whoever rises first, he shall eat two.

6.35 The Binary Conjoined Compound Sentence \([B + L + B]\)
consists of two Bases, filled by independent clauses, with
a conjunction as overt grammatical link:

25. \(S_{\text{conjoined \_binary}} = + \text{Base}_1 + \text{Link} + \text{Base}_2\)

There are four subtypes, distinguished by the lexical
filler of the Link slot: Adverse with \(\text{tara} 'but'\), in (26),
Inversion with \(\text{ax}\eta\dot{x}\{'not'\), in (27), Reason with \(\text{t\acute{a}le biy}\dot{q}\.
'because', in (28), and Emphatic alternation with a
discontinuous Link \(k\acute{f}\ ... k\acute{f} ... 'either ... or ...', in (29).

26. \(\text{th\acute{y}}\_la\: \text{ax-t\acute{a} bi-m, tara th\acute{y}-m.}\)
smoke-IN not-OK say-NP but smoke-NP
Base\(_1\):indCl \(L:\text{tara Base}_2\):indCl

(They) say 'It is not right to smoke', but (they) smoke.

27. \(k\acute{x}i\_e \text{gxog\acute{a} ax-\eta x}\{, \eta -e kula-d \phi \text{hi-b\acute{a}e}\)
you-of horse not-be me-of oil_press-ER bear-AJ
Base\(_1\):indCl \(L:\text{ax}\eta\Dot{x}\{ \text{Base}_2\):indCl

gxog\acute{a} ga.
horse EM

(It's) not your horse, (it's) the horse my oil press
gave birth to.

28. \(l\acute{x}\acute{e} k\acute{h}\acute{a}rja ta-b\acute{a}: \text{t\acute{a}le bi-\dot{y}\acute{q}}\cdot \phi \text{magi \eta x}\{ \text{sae-1}\)
much expense be-GE why say-if buffalo two kill-IN
Base\(_1\):indCl \(L:\text{t\acute{a}le biy\acute{q}}:\text{ Base}_2\):indCl

t\text{txu-m.}
NEC-NP

Much expense is involved because (you) have to kill
two buffalo.
29.  kí cá ḷhr sagé jxq-{ syá·l-wa·-yá·, kí
either that upon trace put-CJ plaster-EM-if or
L:kí Base₁:depCl

tó la-yá· [ta-mál-on].
what do-if be-UR-EM
Base₂:depCl

Either if (she), having left a trace on that,
had plastered (it), or whatever (she) had done, [(it)
must have been (evident)].

6.36 The Multiple Conjoined Sentence [B + L ± (B + L)ⁿ + B]
consists of potentially more than two Bases, each filled by
an independent clause, linked by conjunctions:

The only subtype found in the data is the Alternation
Sentence, with conjunction u 'or', and the only example in
the corpus with more than two Bases is (31), which has three,
and in which the independent clauses in the Bases are reduced
in the context of dialogue to a single word, filling the
Complement slot of a Complement Verb Phrase in the Predicate
slot of a descriptive clause.

6.37 The Binary Complex Sentence [Mar + B] consists of a
Margin, filled by a dependent clause, followed by a Base
filled by an independent clause:

There are six subtypes distinguished by the subordinator
suffixes on the dependent clause (see Table 6, p. 111):
Concession with -na bile or -se 'even if', in (33-5), Condition with -yä· or -du biyä· 'if', in (36-7), Result with -serō 'since', in (38), Purpose with -bæe lxa·giri 'for the sake of', in (39), Concurrent with -ma or -malé 'while', or the emphatic protracted forms -ma ... -m or -na ... -n, in (40), and Immediate Sequent with -bæe todon 'instantly', in (41). Subvariants of Concession and Condition Sentences, marked by tenses in the apodosis (outcome) independent clause as shown in Fig. 16, express Hypothetical, Factual, or Contrafactual implicational relations (Fig. 10, page 42).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense in the apodosis</th>
<th>nonpast</th>
<th>past</th>
<th>unreal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concession</td>
<td>(27)</td>
<td>(28)</td>
<td>(29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>(30)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relation</td>
<td>Hypothetical</td>
<td>Factual</td>
<td>Contrafactual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 16. Sememic relations of variants of Condition and Concession Sentences.

9There is one lacuna in Fig. 16, because a Condition Sentence does not occur with past tense in the apodosis. Thus (a) is ungrammatical.

*a. dše sax p-i-yä· xyu-i.
1.5 HUND give-if suffice-PA

The sememic relation of Factual Condition is expressed either by a Result Sentence, (b), or by a Reason Sentence, (c).

b. dše sax p-i-serō xyu-i.
1.5 HUND give-since suffice-PA

Since (he) gave (me) 150 (rupees) it was sufficient.

c. paisā· xyu-i tále bi-yä dše sax p-i-f.
money suffice-PA why say-if 1.5 HUND give-PA

The money was sufficient because (he) gave (me) 150 (rupees).
33. biyə· la-se əsa yʊ-µy.  

wedding do-even_if inheritance AVL-NP  
Mar:depCl Base:indCl

Even if (she) marries (she) receives the inheritance.

34. bíra·mi ta-ná' bile cyʊ-d mrg-r  
sickness happen-even_though YT_son-ER field-IN  
Mar:depCl Base:indCl

no sywʊ-la.  
weeds pull-PLUP

Even though (he) was sick, Youngest Son had been weeding the fields.

35. cá dín, dasmi bi-i birf, cxaé ax-khɨyá:-na bile ya',  
that day Dasmi say-CJ tika not-apply-even_if also  
Base:indCl Mar:depCl . . . . . . . . .

pri-mála.  
taboo-UR

Even if (you) had not worn a tika (= a spot on forehead as a mark of having done a religious ceremony) on that day called Dasmi, (you) would still be bound by the taboo.

36. cɨnɨyá· mlxa a·sara pəc gate rʊj-dú biyə· a·soja  
chiniya rice Asar five day plant-if Asoj  
Mar:depCl Base:indCl

pacis gate jare mɪ-m.  
25 day about ripen-NP

If (one) transplants chiniya rice on 5 Asar (it) ripens about 25 Asoj.

37. mxaina-r ɗer sae pɨ-yə' ca-b negə kwə  
month-in 1.5 HUND give-if eat-GE with cloth  
Mar:depCl Base:indCl

kɨi-bá' xyu-mála.  
wear-GE suffice-UR

If (he) had given (me) 150 (rupees) a month, (it) would have been sufficient for food and clothing.

10 In (35) the Margin is embedded within the Base, and its extent is indicated by the row of dots.
38. kʰé-la· ax-yó-seró əgrej· ax-xra.
study-IN not-AVL-since English not-know
Mar:depCl Base:indCl
Since (I) did not get to study, (I) do not know English.

39. dasaq mxá·di-bae lxa·gi-ri, se lxé lxé ki-mů́.
Dasain observe-AJ sake-in meat much much buy-NP
Mar:depCl Base:indCl
For observing Dasain (festival), (they) buy lots and lots of meat.

40. caída ra Ḫa· xya·-ma-lé, ṇa ṭyddikhěla-ri xya·-lá.
Cait five go-PR-AV me Tundikhel-to go-PLUP
Mar:depCl Base:indCl
As (the month) Cait was going five (= On 5 Cait), I went to the Tundikhel.11

41. jxya·lgán-ylé té-bae todon phëri cá mxí-nen
jail-from release-AJ instant again that person-with
Mar:depCl Base:indCl
pha·- Ḫa·-í.
husband-in go-PA
As soon as (she) was released from jail (she) eloped with that man.

6.38 The Multiple Complex Sentence [Mar ± Mar^n + B] consists of potentially more than one Margin, each filled by a dependent clause, followed by a Base, filled by an independent clause:

42. \[ S_{complex\ multiple} = + Margin ± Margin^n + Base \] 
\[ \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{depCl} \\ \text{depCl} \\ \text{indCl} \end{array} \right. \]

The one subtype observed of this construction is the Sequence Sentence, in which the dependent clause is suffixed with conjunctive particles -i, -i bir, and -si.12 The

---

11 I identify the form -malé as -ma 'protracted' + -le 'adverbial', but I am unable to account for the tones -malé instead of the form -mále one would expect from the morphotonemic rules.

12 The forms function very much like the Nepali forms with suffix -era, called by Clark (1963:160) 'conjunctive participles'. Hari (1972:57) glosses the -era suffix as 'sequence action'.

Sequence Sentence encodes event-event temporal succession in (43), event-span temporal succession in the relation of Margin₁ to the Base in (44), state-state temporal overlap in the relation of Margin₂ to the Base in (44), and factual condition in (45), in which the reported speech in the Margin explains the action reported in the Base.

43. sʃ jaga jx₉{- birʃ, yúma-e bᵃ·nu jx₉{- birʃ, wood PL put-CJ stone-of wall put-CJ Mar₁:depCl Mar₂:depCl
cá khíb né mₜ·bó-ladi, th₇{- birʃ, kₜₙq{-.
that O_man with O_woman-DAT put-CJ burn-PA Base:indCl Mar₃:depCl

After putting the wood (in place), and putting the stone platform, and placing the old man and the old woman (there), (they) burned (them).

44. kwʃ mxi mₜₐₜₘₐ lₜ₉·na, ré-r-bae dx{ phiri,
some person Mangal temple side-at-AJ house upon Base:indCl
mxₜwʃ pₓʃ bᵃ·li phₜ₉-s₁, aₜ₉-phₜ₇r ti-s₁, thₙyo-la.
rupee four fee pay-CJ landing-upon stay-CJ watch-PLUP Mar₁:depCl . . . . . Mar₂:depCl . . .

After paying a four rupee admission, some people were sitting upstairs and watching on the houses beside Mangal Temple.

45. kwʃ mxi 'noksan ta-ʃ' bi-i birʃ kro-ba'.
some person damage happen-PA say-CJ cry-GE Base:indCl Mar:depCl . . . . . .

Saying, 'Damage has happened (to me),' some men wept.

6.4 The Sentence Periphery is shown as optional in the general formula for a sentence (Sec. 6.1), and consists of five tagmemes:

a) Exclamation (Ex) includes héd teri 'rubbish!', cʰya 'disgusting!', abwʃ 'amazing!', kʰóî 'anyhow, nevertheless (with a shrug)'.

46. héd teri! [kxi-e gₓoqₐ ax-ŋx{, ... ]
rubbish you-of horse not-be Ex:ex

Rubbish! [It's not your horse ...]
47. ch'ya, [káttì ax-ch'ya'-bae tə'.] disgusting how much not-good-AJ word
Ex:ex
Disgusting! What filthy talk (that is)!

b) Vocative (Voc) is filled by proper nouns or kinship terms used as terms of address, optionally preceded by a hailing call lú, é, ó 'Hey!'

48. ó khíba, [rī-d.]
hey O_man arise-IM
Voc:npr

Hey, old man, [get up.]

49. [cá cxamiri, cá phalaná cxamiri, ηα-lai that girl that particular girl me-DAT
xri-bx[-n,] a·ba'.
beg-give-IM father
Voc:npr

[That girl, that particular girl, ask for her for me,]
Father.

c) Response (Resp) is filled by expressions such as Q 'yes, I see', ax-ŋx{ (not-be) 'no', tā-m, tā-m sidí 'OK', tūsī, tūsidí 'I don't know', xy 'really! You don't say!' Response expressions frequently occur without any other sentence material, but they can also occur as sentence introducers:

50. ax-ŋx{, [ŋa-d-ám, mlxasi ti-mmá matte pibx[-la.] not-be me-ER-TO rice one-pint only send-PLUP
Resp:resp
No, [I only sent one pint of rice.]

51. W: [tále ch'a'-bá-na?] D: tūsidí', [tále ηxe?] why thus-GE-EM don't_know why be
Resp:resp
W: [Why (is it) that way?] D: I don't know, [why is it?]

d) Sentence topic (To) is filled by a noun phrase with a topic-marking particle suffixed (Sec. 3.32). I treat the topic tagmeme as on sentence level when it is preposed, and separated from the following sentence by an intonation break. Otherwise, as in the examples in Sec. 3.32, it functions on clause level.
52. ɳa-m, ['kwê lxé ho ki13 cyugú-de,' bi-b-ga.] me-TO cloth much be or little-little say-GE-EM To:NP ar
As for me, [(I) was saying, 'Are there a lot of clothes or just a little?']

53. ca-ma-la, [cxa cxami tôi ax-xre-ná.] that-PL-TO son daughter at_all not-be-DI To:NP ar
As for them, [(they) had no sons or daughters.]

e) Final Comment (Fin) serves to terminate a topic, and is filled only by cxagana 'thus, like that'.

54. [khôyô khôyô mattrê khî xris kha-bâe txi-r ti-ji sometimes only self anger come-AJ time-in one-CL qxi-ji bi-my cargô pó-my,] cxagana. two-CL say-NP sharp speak-NP like_that Fin:cxagana
[Only sometimes, when he is in a bad mood, does he say scolding things, (and) speak sharply,] that's all.

13 The forms ho and ki are among the relatively few grammatical function words borrowed from Nepali. Such borrowings are more common in the speech of more eastern villages, as in (52) in the speech of G.
7.1 Levels beyond the sentence. In segmenting Gurung texts into constituents one encounters linguistic units larger than a sentence. I posit paragraph and discourse as two levels of organization beyond the sentence in the grammatical hierarchy of Gurung.\(^1\)

Paragraphs are recognized, and defined, by the fact that sentences in sequence exhibit linking mechanisms. The linking mechanisms in Gurung are of the three kinds Longacre (1968:1.55) described in general for Philippine languages:

---

\(^1\) Pike (1964a:129) asserts that 'beyond the sentence lie grammatical structures available to linguistic analysis, describable by technical procedures, and usable by the author for the generation of ... linguistic works'. Tagmemicists who have written on such structures include Wise (1971), Longacre (1968, 1972), and Reid (1970). These authors have posited paragraph and discourse as levels of grammatical structure beyond the sentence. My approach to paragraph and discourse analysis draws particularly on Longacre (1968).

Gleason (1968), who adapted Lamb's stratificational model for discourse study, does not discuss levels of organization of grammatical material but focusses on strata of structure: a 'semologic' structure containing Actions, Connections, Participants, and Roles, and a 'shallow' structure which includes the realizations of these elements and also features that are predictable from rules of the particular language, such as the relative use of nouns, pronouns, or zero in participant reference.

Grimes and Glock (1970) discuss also two kinds of structure, deep and surface, treating paragraphs and sentences as part of the surface grammar, and underlying semantics within deep structure. They note that repetition (or 'chaining', in Longacre's terminology) is characteristic of Saramaccan narrative paragraphs.

Hendricks (1972:89-90) observes that a similar distinction of two kinds of structure is made also by folklorists such as Dundes between a non-language-particular 'folkloristic' (or 'narrative') structure and the 'linguistic' structure studied for a particular language. The two kinds of structure are called in this study sememic and grammatical, but I am more concerned with the lower hierarchical levels - I am not in a position to describe sememic structures in Gurung on the grand scale of the analyses of folktales by Propp (1958) and Dundes (1963).
'(1) chaining [characteristic of NARRATIVE and PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS] - in which part of a sentence is recapitulated or explicitly referred to in the onset of the succeeding sentences; (2) parallelism [characteristic of EXPLANATORY and HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS] - in which all or part of one sentence is paraphrased in the following sentence as a whole, or in some specific part of that sentence; and (3) repartée [characteristic of DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS] - in which what is said by one speaker evokes something from (normally) another speaker(s).

Sentences so linked form the nucleus of a paragraph, while the periphery of a paragraph includes preposed and postposed sentences which do not share in the linkage characteristic of the paragraph type, although they may link with the nucleus as a whole, as when a TERMINUS tagmeme summarizes the procedural sequence of the nucleus. Unlinked sentences also occur as parenthetical material in NARRATIVE and PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS in Gurung.

Paragraphs exhibit a unity of subject matter which probably reflects the organization of sememic material at this hierarchical level. In NARRATIVE and PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS this is a matter of the one participant being in focus throughout the paragraph, generally as initiator of actions; in EXPLANATORY and HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS it is a unity of theme, as the one proposition is paraphrased and supported throughout; in DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS the unity is conveyed by the closure of an utterance-response sequence.

Some introducer particles, particularly jxa·lē phēri 'then again' in NARRATIVE PARAGRAPHS, mark a new paragraph. Other particles which optionally occur as sentence introducers, such as jxa·lē 'then' and da·i 'then' give support to paragraph identification in that they more commonly occur at what on other grounds appear paragraph boundaries, although they do sometimes occur to introduce paragraph-medial sentences.

A temporal phrase, with or without one of the introducer particles, is diagnostic of a paragraph beginning when it breaks the sequence of linked sentences. Such a phrase often marks a discontinuity in the flow of time in the discourse,
which is noted by Grimes (1972b:126) as generally an important principle for the partitioning of discourses.

'Final' and 'nonfinal' forms of the imperative and the nonpast and past indicative verb suffixes (Sec. 5.1) are stated by my informants to mark some completeness or incompleteness in a sentence, and their distribution loosely relates to occurrence final and nonfinal in paragraphs, as in the narrative portion in (2) below (except for the first two sentences which employ final forms). There are also examples, such as (1), where the 'nonfinal' form occurs utterance final (though this may have been due to an interruption!).

1. D: dxeró-m ró-le ø. cú-i kʰɔ·-kʰa-dʃ.  
   now-TO sleep-HO RQ this-EM finish-come-PA

   W: kʰɔ·-ʃ-ʃ.  
   finish-PA

   D: Now it's time for bed. This is come to the end.  
   W: (It's) finished.

Although no one feature consistently and unambiguously marks paragraphs, the coincidence of various cues generally enables identification of paragraph boundaries. Thus in (2), the closing paragraph of a NARRATIVE DISCOURSE, the mechanism of chaining is clearly illustrated, the paragraph begins with the introducer jxa·lé phéri, and there is a single participant filling the Subject slot throughout. Even in this example, though, where the chaining is unusually complete, not every noninitial BUILDUP (BU)² has a subordinate clause in the prenuclear margin giving an overt link (Longacre's 'Ground') for the new information (Longacre's 'Figure'). The repetition of lexical material from the Figure of one sentence to the Ground of the next is shown by the arrows in (2).

²BUILDUP tagmemes form the nucleus of a NARRATIVE PARAGRAPH (Sec. 7.22).
**Sec. 7.1**

2. **Ground Figure**

'Horse Festival'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jxa·lé phérl</th>
<th>dx{-r kʰa-ʃ.</th>
<th>BU₁:SimS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Then again</td>
<td>(I) came home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sisʃ kʃ-ʃ.</th>
<th>BU₂:SimS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(I) got the bottles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ηxe kʃ-bá-r xya-ʃ.</th>
<th>BU₃:SimS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(I) went to get the milk.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ηxe kʃ-ʃ bʃrʃ.</th>
<th>BU₄:SeqS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Having got the milk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kʰa-ʃ.</th>
<th>BU₅:SeqS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(I) came.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nesá-r, dx{-r kʰa-ʃ.</th>
<th>BU₆:SeqS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the evening, having come home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kʃʃ hʃn gʃrf kʊ-dʃ.</th>
<th>BU₇:SeqS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(I) sat for a while.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>da·l</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Then</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ro-ʒl-ʃ.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(I) went to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**A NARRATIVE PARAGRAPH** showing chaining linkage.

Discourse, in contrast with paragraph, is the largest unit of linguistic organization I have noted in Gurung (Chapter 8). It is posited as a level separate from paragraph because of more pronounced features of opening and closure, and because the internal structure of a discourse is fairly loose compared with the intraparagraph linkage mechanisms. Further, while discourses of a particular type - NARRATIVE, PROCEDURAL, EXPLANATORY, HORTATORY, or CONVERSATIONAL - are composed largely of paragraphs of the
corresponding type they may include paragraphs of other types also, as when an EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPH expounds a PROCEDURE tagmeme in a PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE (see paragraphs 5, 8, and 9 in the text 'How We Observe Dasain' in Appendix 1).

Linguistic units above the sentence naturally divide into monologue versus dialogue, with monologue units of almost any level acting as fillers of tagmemes in dialogues. Sec. 7.2 describes monologue paragraph types, and Sec. 7.3 DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS.

7.2 Monologue paragraph types. Each of the four monologue paragraph types I posit in Gurung - NARRATIVE, PROCEDURAL, EXPLANATORY, and HORTATORY - consists of a nucleus, which is distinctive for the type, as shown in Table 11, and peripheral tagmemes, which are in general shared by all or most of the types (Sec. 7.21).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Nucleus</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NARR</td>
<td>± BUILDUP_{l} ± ... ± PARENS_{i} ... + BUILDUP_{n}</td>
<td>7.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROC</td>
<td>± STEP_{l} ± ... ± PARENS_{i} ± ... + STEP_{n}</td>
<td>7.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPL</td>
<td>+ TEXT ± ANTITH ± EXPO_{n} ± REASON_{n} +</td>
<td>7.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>± RESULT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORT</td>
<td>+ EXHOR ± REASON ± REINF_{n}</td>
<td>7.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11. Monologue paragraph nuclei.

In the formulae in this section nuclear tagmemes are enclosed in square brackets. Filler classes listed for tagmemes in the formulae are based on paragraphs analyzed in the data - they are not necessarily exhaustive of the variety of creative possibility in Gurung paragraphs.
7.21 Peripheral tagmemes in monologue paragraphs include PRELIMINARY, TERMINUS, and FOOTNOTE. The PRELIMINARY (PRELIM) typically introduces the subject of the paragraph, gives a preview of its content, or states relevant background; the TERMINUS gives a summary or closing comment, often with lexical parallels with the PRELIMINARY; the FOOTNOTE (so far noted only in an EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPH) is a device for adding detail on some point not in the mainstream of the paragraph (J. Glover 1971b:12). Thus in the text 'On Consulting Astrologers' (Appendix 1) the first paragraph described the ceremony of eating new rice - and a FOOTNOTE was added on dates of planting and ripening of rice varieties.

The PRELIMINARY and TERMINUS tagmemes are distinguished from the nuclear tagmemes in that they refer to the nucleus as a whole, not to the adjacent sentences, and in that in NARRATIVE and PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS they 'provide non-sequential material, usually explanatory in nature, and are therefore considered to be peripheral to the paragraph structure' (Reid 1970:126). Linkage by anaphora is typical of the TERMINUS (as noted in Bontoc by Reid 1970:134). This is instanced in a PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPH in paragraph 6.1 of the text 'How We Observe Dasain' in Appendix 1, where the TERMINUS is jxa·lé cá kʰ̪˚̊m˚y 'Then that is finished.'; and in the example of an EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPH below, (8), by the phrases cá ka·ran 'for that reason', cxau sama·n-jaú 'that much of things', and cxagana 'thus'. I have not noted occurrences of TERMINUS tagmemes in NARRATIVE or HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS.

7.22 NARRATIVE PARAGRAPHS have a structure as shown in (3),

3. NARR PARA = ± PRELIM [+ BUILDUPⁿ ± PARENS]  
     SimS SimS SimS  
     SeqS EXPL PARA  
     EnumS

The nuclear BUILDUP tagmemes express the chronological events leading to the one obligatory tagmeme, the final BUILDUP (BUILDUPⁿ), which is the climax of interest or rhetorical
goal towards which the paragraph is directed. The \textsc{parens}_i tagmeme follows \textsc{buildup}_i (i can have any value from 1 to n) and serves semantically to explain or amplify \textsc{buildup}_i.

An alternative analysis would be to treat each \textsc{buildup}_i + \textsc{parens}_i sequence as itself a paragraph structure, presumably \textsc{text} + \textsc{exposition} of an \textsc{explanatory paragraph}. This analysis would be in accord with Longacre's application of the principle of recursion within paragraphs (1968:1.53): whenever two or more sentences within a paragraph 'seem to belong together this unity is indicative of an embedded paragraph'. Applied rigidly in the analysis of texts this principle leads to multiply embedded structures within paragraphs.

Against such an analysis, however, is the fact that the putative embedded paragraph would have very restricted structure - no periphery and, always and only, two nuclear tagmemes, \textsc{text} and \textsc{exposition}. Rather than set up such a restricted embedded unit, and for practical clarity in presenting analyzed text, I posit the \textsc{parens} tagmeme as a constituent of the \textsc{narrative} (and \textsc{procedural}) \textsc{paragraphs}. 3

The \textsc{parens} tagmeme does not have the chaining linkage characteristic of \textsc{buildup} tagmemes, the parenthetical comment may be overtly marked by the adversive conjunction \textsc{tara} 'but' as in (4) (see next page), but not necessarily, as in the examples in the \textsc{procedural discourse} in Appendix 1.

The \textsc{preliminary} serves to tie the paragraph in to the wider context, as in (4) where it summarizes the preceding paragraph in the story.

---

3 Longacre himself cites (1968:1.86) an \textsc{alternative step} tagmeme (one of the functions of the \textsc{parens} in Gurung) as a contrastive feature of \textsc{procedural paragraphs} in several Philippine languages. Wise (1971:78-9) posited a Parenthesis tagmeme in each of her grammatical paragraphs.
### 4. Ground Figure

**'Horse Festival'**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jxa·lé, phēri,</th>
<th>gxogā khēl kʰʰ'-di.</th>
<th>the horse games finished</th>
<th>PRELIM: Sims</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Then again</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BU₁:Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da·l</td>
<td>sa·lkāla khēl suru la-f.</td>
<td>cycle games began.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tara,</td>
<td>ḥgrejī gxrī mu-la'.</td>
<td>there was an Englishman.</td>
<td>TEXT: Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PARENS₁: EXPL PARA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tara</td>
<td>aru tā'n nxepali mu-la'.</td>
<td>The others were all Nepali.</td>
<td>EXPO: Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But</td>
<td>nxepali gxrī phōs ta-ʃ, ḥgrejī segen ta-ʃ.</td>
<td>A Nepali came first, the Englishman came second.</td>
<td>BUₙ:EnumS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tara</td>
<td>cá-maŋ mį qa-lai thĄ-ax-xrē.</td>
<td>his name is not known to me</td>
<td>PARENSₙ: Sims</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A NARRATIVE PARAGRAPH
7.23 PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS are similar to NARRATIVE PARAGRAPHS in their form of chaining linkage, and in building up to a climax of interest, $\text{STEP}_n$, which is the one obligatory tagmeme in the formula (5).

$$\text{PROC PARA} = \pm \text{PRELIM} \, (\pm \text{STEP}_n \, \pm \text{PARENS}_i) \, \pm \text{TERM}$$

However the two types differ in Gurung in that: a) the tense of the verb forms in past for NARRATIVE, as in (2) and (4), and nonpast for PROCEDURAL, as in (6) (see next page); b) a TERMINUS tagmeme may occur in the periphery of PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS, as in paragraph 6.1 in the text 'How We Observe Dasain', but has not been noted in NARRATIVE PARAGRAPHS; and c) within the nucleus of PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS there is more commonly the occurrence of PARENS tagmemes. The example (6) employs a Conditional Sentence as a PRELIMINARY, setting the scene (ignorance of weaving) for the paragraph. Then the sequence of asking for help, being shown, and weaving, leads to the goal of $\text{STEP}_n$ of possessing skill.

4 The similarities are marked in many languages. Jessie Glover on Gurung (1971b) and a number of writers on Philippine languages, such as Dibabawon (Barnard and Longacre 1968), have treated the two types as one.
6. Ground

'Women's Work'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ax-xra-biyə' cá xra-bae mxl-maq ne ba·lu ŋywí-m.</td>
<td>If (you) don't know how (you) ask people who do.</td>
<td>PRELIM:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cá-maq-ne ba·lu, ŋa-d cú cha la-bá· ax-xra. ŋa·laí lu bxí-n, bil-my.</td>
<td>(You) say to them, 'I can't do this thus. Please teach me.'</td>
<td>STEP 1:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jxa·lé</td>
<td>(You) bring them.</td>
<td>STEP 2:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(You) weave (and) then, ca-ma~ xWI-bxa-m~.</td>
<td>(they) look for you.</td>
<td>STEP 3:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da·i</td>
<td>(You) weave.</td>
<td>STEP 4:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Seqs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cá-maq-dí, cha la-d, cha la-d, bi-i, lu bxí-mú.</td>
<td>they teach, saying 'Do thus, and thus'.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jxa·lé</td>
<td>ró-m.</td>
<td>STEP 5:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(you) weave.</td>
<td>Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ró-mú, da·i</td>
<td>cá-maq-d lu bxí-seró cyugú cyugú xra-m.</td>
<td>STEP n:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>since they taught (you), (you) know a little.</td>
<td>Ress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPH
7.24 EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPHS may be represented by the formula (7):

\[
7. \text{ EXPL PARA} = \pm \text{PRELIM} (\pm \text{TEXT} \pm \text{ANTITH}) + \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{ex} \\
\text{SimS} \\
\text{ConcS} \\
\text{EnumS} \\
\text{EXPL PARA} \\
\text{SimS} \\
\text{ResS} \\
\text{ReasonS} \\
\text{PROC PARA} \\
\text{NARR PARA} \\
\text{HISTORY NARR DISC}
\end{array}
\]

The one obligatory tagmeme, TEXT, states the theme proposition of the paragraph, which is supported by the other nuclear tagmemes. The EXPOSITION tagmeme(s) restate the theme proposition, in paraphrase or adding details, while the REASON and RESULT give respectively some perceived cause and consequence of the proposition. The linkage in the nucleus of EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPHS is semantic parallelism, Figure to Figure in the case of TEXT and EXPOSITION, and (only occasionally explicitly) from Ground to Figure in the case of REASON and RESULT. In analyzing EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPHS I find Longacre's differentiation of a preposed Ground₁ and a postposed Ground₂ in component sentences useful. REASON tagmemes often have in Ground₁ an introducer such as ka‘ran 'because', and RESULT tagmemes often have as filler a Reason Sentence, where the Ground₂ is linked by such an introducer, as in (8) (see next pages). However the introducer may not be explicit, as in (9) (see page 166) where the REASON tagmeme is filled by a Simple Sentence.

The ANTITHESIS tagmeme states an exception to the theme proposition of the TEXT. It may be expounded by an embedded EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPH, as in (8).
8. 'On a Post-funeral Ceremony'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ground 1</th>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Ground 2</th>
<th>TEXT:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pae</td>
<td>paisá· khrája ta-m.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la-seró</td>
<td>there is financial expenditure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Since (you) do a PFC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tara</td>
<td>kwí-la paisá· mixa lxé khrája la-m, kwí-la paisá· mixa lxé khrája ax-lá. some expend much rice and money, others do not.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But</td>
<td>kwí mixi sa-rón</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka·ran, khai-le bi-du blyq', Because, if (you) ask how (that is),</td>
<td>plxó-b ta-m. some people are extremely rich.</td>
<td>REASON:</td>
<td>CondS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cá mixi si-xya· du blyq'</td>
<td>mixa mxwí paisá· lxé khrája ta-m,</td>
<td>ka·ran tále blyq' cá mixi-la dxansampati lxé mu. because those people have great wealth.</td>
<td>RESULT:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If those people die</td>
<td>there is a lot of expenditure of rice and money,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sec. 7.2

8. 'On a Post-funeral Ceremony' (contd.)

Ground 1  Figure  Ground 2

cé ka·ran
For that reason

Ixé saé khárja ta-m.
there is an expenditure of many things.

tále biyá· mági ṇxī
sae-1 txu-m, ra ṇxī
sae-1 txu-m, kxyū
ṇxī sae-1 txu-m.
because (you) have to kill two buffalo, two goats, and two sheep.

piaisā· mlxa 1xé
khárja ta-bá',
There is a lot of expenditure of money and rice.

mlxa cyugú-de bi-
ba', ṇxi-syu mxuri
caidi-m, khorsa·ni
ṇxa-byō caidi-m.
Rice, at the least, (you) need twenty muri (= 400 gal.),
chilli, (you) need five gallons.
8. 'On a Post-funeral Ceremony' (contd.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ground 1</th>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Ground 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jxa·lé</td>
<td>kolá· parú sq-plxí· de caidi-m, nxú sq-mná· plxi-mna· de caidi-m, chyugú đer dxa·rné de caidi-m, besa·r nx[-mna· de caidi-m.</td>
<td>REASON 2: Enums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then</td>
<td>buttermilk about three or four containers are needed, garlic about three or four pints, butter about 1.5 dharni (= 4 Kg.), and tumeric about two pints.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jxa·lé, cxau sama·n-jaú jordi-l birf,</td>
<td>ca-báe sáe tariga cxagana.</td>
<td>TERM: SeqS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then, when (you) have assembled that much of things,</td>
<td>the accounting of foodstuffs is thus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9. 'Horseman and the Oilpress Owner'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ground₁</th>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Ground₂</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kʰaβ-e kula-d-af gxorá phi-m-ma.</td>
<td>TEXT: SimS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose oilpress ever gives birth to a horse?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cú gxorá cá mxi-l ga.</td>
<td>RESULT: SimS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This horse is that person's.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPH.

EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPHS have a recapitulatory variant (J. Glover 1971b:13). The only examples so far noted come in fables, so they perhaps represent polished versions of rhetorical argument - or it may be that the heavy reliance on repetition (and raised voice) is simply a result of the weakness of the argument, in Gurung as in other cultures! The recapitulation gives a cyclic form to the argument, in which the tagmemes are repeated in the opposite order from their original occurrence, as in (10) (see next page).

7.25 HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS have the structure (11):

11. HORT PARA = ± PRELIM [+ EXHOR ± REASON + SimS SimS SimS SimS]
    | ex EnumS EnumS |
    | AntithS EXPL PARA |

The only obligatory tagmeme is the EXHORTATION, which is always expounded by a sentence with at least one clause in the imperative mood. In most examples REASON is also present. The REINFORCEMENT tagmeme supports the EXHORTATION either by restatement of the imperative, or by adding detail, as in (12) (see page 168).
10. 'Horseman and the Oilpress Owner'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>héd teri.</td>
<td>Rubbish!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>kxi-e gxoğá-na ax-ŋxį.</td>
<td>(It) is not your horse!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ná-e kula-d phi-báe gxoğá ga.</td>
<td>(It) is the horse my oilpress gave birth to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>kxi-d cywį-thę-bá-na ax-ŋxį.</td>
<td>You certainly did not tether (one) here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>khaba-d tól ax-xre-bá khįxyo-r-ai gxoğá cywį-thę-ma, mxį ax-tí-báe khįxyo-r-ai ya.</td>
<td>Who would ever tether a horse in a place where there was nothing, in a place where nobody was staying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ná-e kula-d phi-báe gxoğá ga.</td>
<td>(It) is the horse my oilpress gave birth to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>qa-l ta-i-jón, dxerő kxi-l ax-ŋxį.</td>
<td>(It) is indeed mine, not yours henceforth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>qa-l ga.</td>
<td>(It) is mine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A recapitulatory EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPH.
12. 'Man and the Tiger'\(^5\)

| \(\text{\texttt{\textbackslash d\textbackslash i\textbackslash d\textbackslash u}}\). | EXHOR: | Sims |
| Wait! |  |
| \(\text{\texttt{\textbackslash t\textbackslash g\textbackslash o\textbackslash \textbackslash a\textbackslash x\textbackslash c\textbackslash d\textbackslash d}}\). | REINF\(_1\): | Sims |
| Don't eat (me) now. |  |
| \(\text{\texttt{\textbackslash n\textbackslash a\textbackslash \textbackslash p\textbackslash h\textbackslash a\textbackslash l\textbackslash a\textbackslash n\textbackslash \textbackslash n\textbackslash a\textbackslash \textbackslash h\textbackslash l\textbackslash x\textbackslash o\textbackslash r\textbackslash b\textbackslash a\textbackslash e\textbackslash m\textbackslash x\textbackslash \textbackslash n\textbackslash e\textbackslash p\textbackslash \textbackslash f\textbackslash \textbackslash t\textbackslash x\textbackslash o\textbackslash l\textbackslash t\textbackslash x\textbackslash u\textbackslash m}}\). | REASON: | Sims |
| I have to meet with a person in such and such a place |  |
| \(\text{\texttt{\textbackslash c\textbackslash m\textbackslash n\textbackslash }\text{\texttt{\textbackslash n\textbackslash e\textbackslash p\textbackslash \textbackslash f\textbackslash \textbackslash t\textbackslash x\textbackslash o\textbackslash l\textbackslash t\textbackslash x\textbackslash u\textbackslash m}}\). \text{\texttt{\textbackslash (I\textquoteright \textbackslash l\textbackslash l)\textbackslash m\textbackslash e\textbackslash t\textbackslash t\textbackslash h\textbackslash a\textbackslash t\textbackslash m\textbackslash a\textbackslash n}}\). | BU\(_1\): | Sims |
| \(\text{\texttt{\textbackslash d\textbackslash a\textbackslash l\textbackslash r\textbackslash f}}\). | REINF\(_2\): | NARR PARA |
| After that |  |
| \(\text{\texttt{\textbackslash c\textbackslash a\textbackslash b\ g\textbackslash a}}\). | BU\(_n\): | SeqS |
| \(\text{\textbackslash c\textbackslash a\textbackslash b\ g\textbackslash a}\). |  |

A HORTATORY PARAGRAPH.

When REASON is expounded by an embedded paragraph it may be permuted in front of the EXHORTATION, but it does not come first in the paragraph - a PRELIMINARY must then occur in order to precede the REASON, as in (13) (see next page).

---

5Analysis of component sentences in terms of Ground and Figure does not appear relevant to HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS, because I have found no examples of sentence margins (the Ground) linking back to preceding sentences in HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS - perhaps because of the scarcity of HORTATORY PARAGRAPHS in the data.
13. 'Horseman and the Oilpress Owner'

héd teri, úldu.
Rubbish, (you) fool.

PRELIM: Ex

TEXT: REASON: EXPL PARA

khabá-e kula-d-aí gxoğa phjí-m ma?
Whose oilpress ever gives birth to a horse?

Whose oilpress ever gives birth to a horse?

RESULT: Sims

This horse is that person's.

cá gxoğa cá mxi-l ga.

EXHOR: Sims

Give (it) to that person.

HORTATORY PARAGRAPH (with REASON preceding EXHOR).

7.3 DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS are either a single EXCHANGE, with structure as in (14), or a combination of EXCHANGES giving a COMPOUND DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, as in (19) below.

14. EXCH = SP-I ± SP-C n ± SP-R

| Monologue | Monologue | Monologue |
| EXCH Resolved |

The constituent tagmemes of an EXCHANGE are INITIATING SPEECH (SP-I), COUNTERING SPEECH (SP-C), and RESOLVING SPEECH (SP-R), defined in terms of the sememic relation of appropriate response to a performative (Sec. 2.4). The filler, Monologue, represents a speaker's total utterance on the one subject to the same addressee. A change of subject or change of addressee usually means a new DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH. The only obligatory tagmeme in an EXCHANGE

---

I adopt in general the framework for DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS proposed by Longacre (1968:1.160-88) and developed in further detail by Klammer (1971).
is the INITIATING SPEECH. Variant readings of (14) give SIMPLE and COMPLEX, RESOLVED and UNRESOLVED DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS. An EXCHANGE with or without a COUNTERING SPEECH is respectively a COMPLEX or SIMPLE DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, as in (15) and (16). The presence of a RESOLVING SPEECH gives a RESOLVED DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, as in (15) and (16), and absence gives an UNRESOLVED DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, as in (17).

15. 'Wedding Account'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S:</th>
<th>qa laqā' la-bá-ri idli xya·-ʃ. jxa·lé idlar hardi xya·-dʃ, carjīla-di ʃxo-ʃ. In fighting I went to Italy. Then Hitler defeated, Churchill conquered.</th>
<th>SP-I(REM): NARR PARA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W:</td>
<td>belayad-ri xya·-ʃ u? Did (you) go to Britain?</td>
<td>SP-C(QE): Sims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S:</td>
<td>belayad ax-xyā', idli-rí (I) didn't go to Britain, (but) to Italy.</td>
<td>SP-R(ANS): AntithS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A RESOLVED COMPLEX DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH.

16. 'Casual Conversation'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H:</th>
<th>kxti kadʃ barsa ta-ʃ, tiyā? How old are you, now?</th>
<th>SP-I(QE): Sims</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D:</td>
<td>caubšs ta-ʃ. (I) am twentyfour.</td>
<td>SP-R(ANS): Sims</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A RESOLVED SIMPLE DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH.
17. 'Wedding Account'

S: sajla mala-i-r ta-fi, kancha laure ax-ta.
Third Brother was in Malaya, Youngest Brother didn't become a soldier

W: ax-ta? tale?
(He) didn't? Why?

S: ax-xya', laura.
(He) didn't go, to the military.

An UNRESOLVED COMPLEX DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH.

COMPLEX DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS like (15) and (17), which have monologue material in the SP-C slot, are actually quite rare in the corpus. Much more frequently the SP-C is expounded by an EXCHANGE, which has the structure of a RESOLVED SIMPLE DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, embedded within the 'outer' (or matrix) DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, as in (18).

18. 'Casual Conversation'

W: kxl-d bi-t-tl. ca tay ba'rer bi-t-tl.
You speak. Speak about that matter.

D: dasaq ba'rer-i?
About Dasain?

W: Q.
Yes.

D: dasaq ...
Dasain ...

A RESOLVED COMPLEX DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH.
Sec. 7.3

(18) is in fact the dialogue introducing the description of Dasain given in Appendix 1. In the extract on 'Marriage Customs' in Appendix 1, paragraph 1.3 has a similar structure to (18). On Longacre's approach (1968:I.165ff.) the first three speeches of each of these examples would alone constitute a COMPLEX DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, as he considers the paragraph terminated once a RESOLVING SPEECH (SP-R) occurs. But such an analysis leaves the final speech hanging unconnected, which is obviously counterintuitive in the light of the final speech's response relation to the SP-I. I therefore modify Longacre's approach to the extent of allowing for embedded dialogue as RESOLVED EXCHANGES in the SP-C slot,7 as in (14).

COMPOUND DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS consist of two or more EXCHANGES on the same speech axis (that is, same speaker to same addressee) and on the same topic. All the nonfinal EXCHANGES must be RESOLVED, while the COMPOUND DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH itself is RESOLVED if and only if the final EXCHANGE, EXCHn, is RESOLVED:

19. CPD DIAL PARA = + EXCHn-1 + EXCHn
   |                    | EXCHResolved |
   | EXCHANGE          | EXCHANGE |

The extract of a conversation on 'Marriage Customs' given in Appendix 1 is a RESOLVED COMPOUND DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH, consisting of three EXCHANGES.

7Klammer (1971:210-4,301-3) notes that Longacre has not handled embedded dialogue, but his own discussion of examples from English is confined to instances where there is a 'shift in speech axis between the [embedded parenthetical paragraphs] and the main [paragraph]', not parenthetical dialogue on the same speech axis at the matrix, as in (19).
In this chapter five discourse types (or genre) are classified according to internal structure - the feature mode (Sec. 1.4). Discourses are units of the highest level of the linguistic hierarchy, but tagmemic theory views language as behaviour, with verbal and nonverbal activity being a unified whole. Verbal activity must therefore be seen in its social setting, including as elements both the individuals involved as speaker(s) and hearer(s) and the cultural situation which they share. The social setting of discourses is therefore relevant in discussion of the distribution mode.

8.1 NARRATIVE DISCOURSE is characterized by the use of past tense forms and the centrality of a chronological sequence of events. Two types of NARRATIVE DISCOURSE may be called HISTORY and FABLE, distinguished by the characteristic presence in FABLE of SUMMARY and MORAL tagmemes, which are absent from HISTORY, and by the fact that FABLES are built up sememically largely in terms of the sememic relation of PROBLEM-SOLVING (Sec. 2.4), while HISTORY is simply a collection of events in chronological sequence, and so encodes the relation of temporal sequence (Sec. 2.35). The grammatical structure of HISTORY is:

\[ \text{HISTORY} = \pm \text{APERTURE} + \text{EPISODE}^n \pm \text{CLOSURE} \]

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \text{NARR PARA} & \text{NARR PARA} & \text{NARR PARA} \\ \text{EXPL PARA} & \end{array} \]

\text{HISTORY is here used as a label for an anecdotal narrative of past events, including material of such ephemeral interest as what the narrator did on a certain occasion. As a label for this class of Gurung NARRATIVE DISCOURSE, the word does not have the analytical and interpretative connotations of scholarly study. A story which departs from chronological sequence by starting in medias res, like the section of the text 'On Consulting Astrologers' dealing with eating new rice, is treated not as a NARRATIVE DISCOURSE, but as an EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPH where the HISTORY fills an EXPOSITION slot (page 162).}
Within HISTORY one can distinguish variants according to whether the account is firsthand, generally with first person pronouns, or secondhand. Secondhand accounts are marked by the reported speech particle ro, indicating that the speaker is relating what he has heard, not what he has seen (Sec. 6.22). Formally, the particle occurs only fairly infrequently in narrative text. Thus in the portion on family history in text WA (Glover 1970:98-112), ro occurs only once in a passage of several sentences relating events before the speaker's birth - at the end of the first two paragraphs:

2. **EP₁:NARR PARA** ği-e surbîr gurğ bxandâ pailé-bae we-of Surbîr Gurung than before-AJ
   khe mřīsa nj-r-sa-ulé, cú biskuré nj-sa-ra ancestors Mnisa village-from this Biskoliya village-to yú-i. ńi-f, cú kajú-ri. come-PA stay-PA this Ghacok-in

**EP₂:NARR PARA** ćxa-le, ği-e ba-jyu-e a-ba-dí then we-of grandfather-of father-TO
   bisaré-thë kxor bi-si, bi-mula. bi-mul ro. Biskoliya-dweller headman say-CJ say-PH say-PH QO

Our ancestors before Surbîr Gurung (the speaker's greatgrandfather) came down from the village of Mnisa to this Biskoliya village. (They) stayed, in this Ghacok.

Then, as for our grandfather's father, he was called the headman of Biskoliya, so they say. (Lit. saying headman of Biskoliya, they used to say. They used to say, it is said.)

**APERTURE** is distinguished from the **EPISODES** in that the verbs have the suffix -la 'pluperfect', which marks states existing in past time, or events completed prior to the narrative time. The purpose of the APERTURE is to 'provide temporal and spatial setting and to introduce at least some of the principal dramatis personae' (Longacre 1968:1.5). Thus in the 'Horse Festival' text (Glover 1970: 89-92) the narrator, the festival, the rain, and the umbrella are all mentioned in the APERTURE. **EPISODES** carry
the sequence of events, using the 'past' suffixes -\textit{\text{-i/-di}}, although further setting sections\textsuperscript{2} may be interwoven, using the -\textit{\text{-na}} 'discovery' and -\textit{\text{-la}} 'pluperfect' suffixes, as in the first two of the eight \textsc{episodes} in the 'Horse Festival' text. \textsc{closure} is similar to the \textsc{episodes} in structure, being expounded by a \textsc{narrative paragraph} with the 'past' suffixes, but returns attention to the main participant(s) introduced in the \textsc{aperture}, and signals closure of the discourse. Thus in the 'Horse Festival' text the \textsc{closure} (shown on page 155 in Sec. 7.1) relates the narrator's return home and end of the day. (An \textsc{episode} in the same text, also filled by a \textsc{narrative paragraph}, is cited on page 159.)

\textsc{fables} proved rather difficult to obtain for the data corpus. I suspect that this was because I did not locate a recognized story-teller from the Gurung culture.\textsuperscript{3} The \textsc{fables} in the corpus were obtained by 'triggering' D's memory of the story of 'The Three Bears' (previously told him in Nepali) and asking for that story in Gurung and any similar ones he might know. The grammatical structure of the resultant stories is (3). \textsc{fables} are characterized in the corpus as being narratives in third person, past time, with the \textsc{aperture} normally employing the -\textit{\text{-na}} 'discovery aspect' forms to give background to the story (although in 'The Man and the Tiger' the first verb \textit{\text{-l}a·} 'had placed' is pluperfect, not discovery aspect). Each \textsc{fable}, including the borrowed 'Three Bears', has in its first clause, in the first indefinite Noun Phrase, the adjective \textit{\text{cha·-bēe}} 'a certain'.

\begin{itemize}
\item[\textsuperscript{2}] Hale (1971b:9) distinguishes \textit{chaining} which recalls a preceding event as a transitional setting for the next event in a narrative (see Sec. 7.1), and \textit{setting sections}, consisting of whole sentences, which normally introduce new material.
\item[\textsuperscript{3}] Wise (1971:212) reports that only recognized story-tellers would tell Nomatsiguenga myths, except that on one occasion a younger man when away from his village contributed a myth. The myth lacked certain characteristic features of those told by older men, and Wise concluded that it was therefore 'ungrammatical on the discourse level'.
\end{itemize}
Usually the phrase is part of the spatial setting for the story. Although cha·-báe functions as a Modifier within the Noun Phrase, in every case the Noun Phrase also contains the normal indefinite article (the numeral gxr‘one’). On phrase level, therefore, cha·-báe is redundant; its function is on discourse level, to mark the FABLE genre.

3. FABLE = + APERTURE + EPISODE
   + SUMMARY +
   NARR PARA in NARR DIAL PARA
   discovery PARA PARA
   aspect with
   cha·báe on
   first indefinite
   Noun Phrase
   ± MORAL ± CLOSURE
   Quots Sims

The FABLES in the corpus are also marked (except for the borrowed 'Three Bears') by a specialized temporal setting: syomá syomá 'once upon a time' or paifle ... satté juga-ri 'before ... in the Clean Time'. The opening sentence of the FABLE 'The Old Man and the Old Woman' (Glover 1970:11-6) is (4):

4. paifle nxeba o desa-ri satté juga-ri, cha·-báe ná·sa
   before Nepal land-in clean age-in thus-AJ village
   gxr‘-ri kh’b né mq·bá ɲx| mu-ná.’
   one-in O_man with O_woman two be-DI
   Formerly, in the land of Nepal, in the Clean Time, in
   a certain village, there were two (people), an old
   man and an old woman.

FABLES frequently include a SUMMARY in the form of a dialogue between characters (as when the men in the council

---

4 The Gurung people speak of four eras, of which we now live in the last. The first, 'the clean time', is described as a time when all creation was a harmony, and all animals, and even inanimate objects, had the power of speech. The stories are remarkably reminiscent of C. S. Lewis' picture of the newly created world in the tales of Narnia.
meeting review the case for the jackal's benefit in 'The Horse Owner and the Oilpress Owner', sentences 77-87 on page 57), and they regularly conclude with a direct quotation from one of the central characters which suggests, although very obliquely, the moral of the story. Thus the conclusion of 'The Old Man and the Old Woman' has the old man saying 'We went on and on, arguing and sitting, and we didn't know what was happening'. It implies the foolishness of arguing, in that this most deplored activity (in Gurung culture) led to the couple's death. Again, 'The Man and the Tiger' (Glover 1970:17-24) ends with the man's mocking words to the re-imprisoned tiger, "In gratitude, I will eat you," you said. Eat up, big one!" This speech points up the tables on the ungrateful tiger, and so implies the moral. The indirectness of stating the moral may be conditioned by a cultural respect for the independence of the individual, which goes to the extent that it is difficult to find any examples of HORTATORY DISCOURSE, such as those described for several Philippine languages by Longacre (1968). Coercion of any kind is rare in Gurung society, and people do much as they please, especially men and boys.

A further characteristic of the FABLE genre, perhaps universally (Dundes 1963, Propp 1958), is a violation of the constraints of normal human experience, in that animals talk, and dead people return to life.

---

5 Syntactically, the Quotative Sentence shown in (3) as a filler of MORAL is a Simple Sentence filled by a Ditransitive Clause with bi- 'say' in the Predicate slot. I do not regard Quotative Sentence as a separate emic type.

6 Ross Caughley (personal communication) tells me that the version of this tale told him by the Chepang of Nepal ends with the couple discovering that the food over which they have been arguing has gone bad during the protracted argument, a less drastic consequence than the death by starvation of the Gurung version.

7 Pignéde (1966:218-9) notes Gurung boys' qualities of assurance and independence, and their readiness to refuse requests by adults.
8.2 PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE is marked by primary use of the 'nonpast' verb suffixes, -m/-mu/-my, contrasting with the 'past' suffixes characteristic of NARRATIVE DISCOURSE. This surface contrast correlates with the semantic one of projected time versus accomplished time. A structural formula for PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE is:

5. \[ \text{PROC DISC} = \text{TITLE} + \text{PROCEDURE}^n + \text{FINIS} \]

The text 'How We Observe Dasain' in Appendix 1 is an example of PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE, exemplifying most of the exponents shown in (5). In the data corpus, TITLE is quite commonly absent from the actual monologue PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE, but in context is supplied by the question which elicited the text. Thus a text on learning to weave, the first PROCEDURE of which consisted of the PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPH on page 161, was a response to the question (6).

6. a·ma·, bxujýu-maŋ, kʰab-di lu-bx[-bᵃ'z Mother, (or) grandmother-PL who-ER teach-give-GE
Mother, (or) grandmothers, (or) who teaches?

The FINIS tagmeme rounds off the DISCOURSE by referring back to the TITLE or to the PRELIMINARY of the first PROCEDURE (which acts in place of a TITLE if one is missing). Thus the text on learning to weave has a FINIS (7):

7. o chʰa-le-na chʰa la-na la-n pʰ'ri pxanxŋ oh thus-AV-EM thus do-PR do-PR again tomorrow li-yd' xraqsa-d-na xra-xya'-m xraqsa-d-na after-towards self-ER-EM know-EM-NP self-ER-EM xra-mu dxerō know-NP henceforth

In that way, keeping on doing thus, eventually one gets to know how, one knows how oneself.

The basic sememic relation encoded by PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE is that of PROBLEM-SOLVING (Sec. 2.4). The CONFLICT (or problem) is stated or implied in the TITLE, the MEDIATION is realized by the PROCEDURES, and the RESOLUTION by the FINIS. Thus in a text on preparing to weave, the eliciting question was 'What things are needed for weaving cloth?', the
PROCEDURES of the PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE go through the necessary steps of preparation, and the FINIS is 'Then (you) begin weaving the cloth'. It may be noted that the PROBLEM-SOLVING predicate, by its very nature, implies also a relation of temporal sequence.

8.3 EXPLANATORY DISCOURSE is characterized by a succession of POINTS treating aspects of the subject, without any temporal sequence. Verb forms are 'nonpast'. The grammatical structure of EXPLANATORY DISCOURSE is:

8. EXPL DISC = ± INTRODUCTION + POINT^n ± CONCLUSION

Typically the POINT tagmemes are expounded by EXPLANATORY PARAGRAPHS, but PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPHS are common exponents in discourses describing customs, as in the text 'On Consulting Astrologers' in Appendix 1. There are similarities between PROCEDURAL and EXPLANATORY DISCOURSES in that both have 'nonpast' verb forms and there is a similarity of fillers between the PROCEDURE and POINT tagmemes, but the two genre contrast in that PROCEDURAL involves temporal sequence and EXPLANATORY does not, and in that, correlated with this, noninitial PROCEDURES have a temporal expression or sequencing conjunction (such as jxa'lé phéri 'then again' or da'-i cá dina-ri 'then on that day') as link, while noninitial POINTS have, mostly, phéri a·rkó tā- 'again another matter' or sometimes trivially different variants such as jxa'lé a·rkó ūrīgā 'then another accounting'.

The CONCLUSION refers back to the main subject of the text, as stated in the INTRODUCTION. Thus in the text 'On a Post-funeral Ceremony' the INTRODUCTION is (9):

9. ʁi tamy-māq-la si-xya'-seró pae la-l tzu-m. we Gurung-PL-TO die-EM-since PFC do-IN NEC-NP
After we Gurungs die, (one) must do a post-funeral ceremony.
There follow seven POINTS (POINT₁ is given in full on pages 163-5) dealing with foodstuffs required, ceremonial materials, more food, firewood needed, convenient times of the year, auspicious years, and the programme for a post-funeral ceremony. The CONCLUSION is (10): 8

10. jxa·lé seró pae kʰ₄·-m.
then since PFC finish-NP

From that time the post-funeral ceremony is finished.

Not all EXPLANATORY DISCOURSES in the data have overt INTRODUCTION and CONCLUSION (see, for example, the text 'On Consulting Astrologers'), or the INTRODUCTION may be supplied by an eliciting question which states the subject, as in the case of the 'Marriage Customs' text (Glover 1970:1-10) where the description of three customs followed a request 'Tell me about those three customs'. Whether or not a particular EXPLANATORY DISCOURSE has an overt INTRODUCTION or CONCLUSION its unity is demonstrated by the fact that the noninitial POINTS are all introduced by pʰéri a·rkó tã· 'again another matter', or a similar linking device, and all the POINTS generally relate to one theme. Thus the sememic relation encoded is that of conjunction (Sec. 2.31).

One rather specialized type of EXPLANATORY DISCOURSE is a LETTER, which I classify as EXPLANATORY DISCOURSE on the basis of the same device linking the constituent POINTS:

11. LETTER = + INTRODUCTION ± TRANSITION + POINTⁿ
   | Sims   | Sims   | NARR PARA
   | EXPL PARA
   + CONCLUSION + SIGNATURE
   | HORT DISC | proper noun

Because the reduction of verbal activity to writing robs it of much of the phonological richness of a spoken message, and the shared matrix of situation in which face-to-face

---

8(10) actually is in double function, filling both the discourse-level CONCLUSION slot and the paragraph-level STEPⁿ slot of the PROCEDURAL PARAGRAPH filling POINT₇.
communication takes place, the INTRODUCTION and SIGNATURE tagmemes are obligatory in order to compensate for the loss by spelling out the performatives implicit in a face-to-face situation (writer and addressee identification and, usually, date of writing).

Gurung letters are a recent innovation culturally. Before the introduction of an orthography for Gurung letters were written only in the national language, Nepali. One consequence of this is that most of the letters in the corpus have the formal opening paragraph of addressee and writer identification and greetings in Nepali. Then follows a TRANSITION, a sentence in Nepali, bisesh kura· gurug bha·sa·ma· lek·chu 'The important matters I will write in the Gurung language'. This phenomenon is an instance of the social setting in which the communication takes place governing the linguistic form. Likewise the concluding SIGNATURE (the name of the writer) is often put in Roman script instead of the Devanagari used for the rest of the letter - a sign of the prestige attaching to the Gurkha soldiers who have served in the British Army and learnt to write there, but only in Roman script.

The obligatory CONCLUSION is expounded by a somewhat formulaic HORTATORY DISCOURSE (Sec. 8.4), which usually says 'There's much more to say, but we'll talk when we meet. Write soon. If there are mistakes in this letter please pardon them.'

8.4 HORTATORY DISCOURSE is rare in Gurung in my observation. The only examples which are not embedded in other discourse are songs, where the form is very stylized. The songs I have been able to obtain are those sung at performances of the village dance troupe, sung by the performers and/or some spectators. They consist, most of them, of a chorus,

---

9Bista (1972:83) mentions two types of traditional Gurung dance, sorathi and ghado, of which he notes that sorathi has fallen out of use. It seems that the dancing I observed in Ghacok is a recent cultural innovation - setting
followed by a sequence of verses, each verse being followed by the chorus. Semantically the songs comprise imperatives urging a particular action and statements in the 'nonpast' tense giving supporting reasons. However, since the songs are largely borrowed from outside Gurung culture, many having Nepali words, either completely or in admixture with Gurung, and since the songs are not spontaneous creations but are stylized performances sung for social enjoyment, not the meaning of the words, they are not fruitful data for a study of the way meaning is expressed in grammatical form in Gurung.

HORTATORY DISCOURSES embedded in other discourse in the Gurung data have a very simple structure (11),

11. HORT DISC = ± INTRODUCTION + POINT

of which (12) is an example:

12. INTRODUCTION: resp ax-ŋx[. not-be

POINT₁: HORT PARA (= EXHOR, REASON)

EXHOR: SimS chǐn gxr' tə-d. REASON: SimS cyugú thir[tq. matte. little

moment one stay-IM

POINT₂: HORT PARA (= EXHOR, REINF)

EXHOR: SimS jxa·lo, cú-r ax-khá-ri-d. REINF: SimS xrego-lé-n, tq. la-b ga. far-from-EM word make-GE EM

No! Stay a moment. (It's) only a small matter.

movement to the songs, of which many are drawn from Hindi films. Older Gurungs told me that there was another style of song, and on one occasion I heard a tape recording of a ballad type which was acclaimed as the old style, but I was unable to find anyone who could supply information on it.

Thus one song, the theme of which is the parlous economic state of the Gurung community because of the smoking habit, and a plea to give up smoking, is always performed 'tongue in cheek', and cigarette in hand!
Sec. 8.4-5

And another thing, don't come here. (We'll) consult from a distance.

8.5 CONVERSATIONAL DISCOURSE may be simple, between just two people (or groups acting in concert), or compound, with more than two participants for at least part of the conversation. I will confine attention mainly to the simple conversation, or DIALOGUE DISCOURSE. The grammatical structure of DIALOGUE DISCOURSE is:

13. DIAL DISC = + OPENING ±( TOPIC

EXCHANGE ±(± EXCHANGE

DIAL PARA ±(± EXCHANGE

The optionality of the parenthesized expression allows the formula to cover (with the - reading) the situation where people meet and exchange greetings but do not continue the conversation (as on the trail). The OPENING, consisting of an exchange of greetings as exemplified in (14), and the CLOSURE, consisting of an exchange of leave-taking as in (15), are obligatory in the sense that their absence would be an infringement of cultural norms, constituting impoliteness.

14a. X: kha-ı xwa·? Y: Q, kha-ı. come-PA QE yes come-PA
   X: (You've) come, have you? Y: Yes, (I've) come.

b. X: mxa{l}a·! Y: Q, second_brother yes
   X: Second Brother! Y: Yes.

11 Except for Klammer's study of Shakespeare's I Henry IV (1971), most tagmemic studies of dialogue have taken as data the dialogue reported within a story. Thus Longacre's formulae for DIALOGUE PARAGRAPHS (1968:1.160) included optional SETTING and CLOSURE tagmemes which do not report speech. However Longacre notes (1968:1.47) that DRAMATIC DISCOURSE (in Manobo), when lacking the peripheral tagmemes which reflect the narrator's viewpoint, has an effect 'similar to that of a tape-recorded conversation'. Wrigglesworth (1971[1968]:109) describes this DRAMATIC DISCOURSE as a more direct and vivid way of telling a story than normal narrative. That is, the dialogue is a narrative device. But Gurung conversations, both actual tape-recorded ones and a sample one composed by D, are discursive in nature, not narrative.


b. D: dxeró-m xya-'lé ó, ñhá-gu a'. mxwi s ta-xya-1. now-TO go-HO oh eldest_son TN night be-EM-PA S: Q, abjyq. xya-'lé chyó. yes uncle go-HO forward! D: Now we had better go, eh, son. It's got dark. S: Yes, uncle. Let's go, come on.

These exchanges, which mark clearly the commencement and conclusion of the DIALOGUE DISCOURSE, are both fairly empty and conventional in content, and appear to be concerned chiefly with performative information, such as may be paraphrased, for the OPENING, 'I see you here, and we are on speaking terms', and, for the CLOSURE, 'We will now conclude our conversation and part on good terms'.

Between the OPENING and CLOSURE the DIALOGUE DISCOURSE may include any number of TOPICS. Although there is often some semantic link between TOPICS, the shift from one topic to another is intuitively felt by the participants and is formally marked in that the initiating utterance of the new TOPIC lacks any anaphoric reference to preceding material, or other link, such as is common between sentences within a TOPIC. The initiating utterance of a new TOPIC may employ however contrastive devices such as explicit or emphatic pronouns as in (16b,c,e). ((16) lists the initiating utterances of five consecutive TOPICS in a conversational

---

12 I assert this from my own experience as a participant in Gurung conversations, and from the fact that recorded conversations in the corpus segment more or less easily into distinct TOPICS. Wise (1971:8-9) tested the intuitions of native speakers of Nomatsiguenga regarding higher level discourse constituents, and observed reactions which apparently confirmed 'the psychological reality of structures beyond the sentence'.
Semantically, the stringing together of TOPICS in the body of the conversation is an instance of the statement level relation of conjunction (Sec. 2.31).

As for the border segments (OPENING and CLOSURE), the actual grammatical form is conditioned by numerous factors of the social setting, such as the relative status of the participants (affecting degree of respect or formality in the forms), their kinship relation (determining the choice of vocative expressions), whether the time is before or after rice-eating (selecting the appropriate answer to 'Have you eaten rice?'), and whether a person has come form uphill (yú-i xwá· 'You've come down, have you?') or elsewhere (kha-í xwá· 'You've come, have you?'). There is little freedom of choice for the speaker in the rather conventional phrases, and I assume that the sememic content is
Sec. 8.5

correspondingly small, a matter of greeting and leave-taking respectively. The factors of the social setting could possibly be included in a performative-type predicate dominating the whole discourse. The form of the actual phrases would then be derived from the sememic content, (such as greeting or leave-taking) in the context of the particular 'social setting' predicate dominating the discourse. But an investigation of the nature of transformations effecting such a derivation is beyond the scope of this study.

13 Gleason (1968:48) apparently also posits that the content of his semologic structure corresponds to whatever in an utterance is not predictable.

14 Wise (1972:6) proposes that performatives be posited on a high level of the hierarchy rather than in every sentence of, say, a narrative text. Grimes discusses performatives (1972b:89ff.) but does not seem to incorporate them into his generative system.
CONCLUSION

Tagmemic theory has been developed chiefly in response to the need for techniques to aid nonnative analysts in the task of translating material, especially the Bible, into hitherto little known and relatively unstudied languages. Early tagmemics concentrated on the problem of helping the analyst organize data in a way that would aid his assimilation of the grammatical patterns of a language. The construction of an apparatus of traditional tagmemic formulae for the description of grammatical structures enables the analyst to grasp an outline of a language's syntax, and to check that his apparatus covers the data of a corpus. But for the purposes of understanding how a particular language functions to encode meaning, such an apparatus must be supplemented by a description of what semantic relations are highlighted by the language, and of how these relations, and others which may not be highlighted in the particular language, are expressed in its syntax. So, more recent trends in tagmemics have been toward formalizing sememic structure.

This study has applied tagmemic theory to a description of the two kinds of structure—sememic and grammatical—in Gurung, and the description will, it is expected, be a useful aid in the translation task, especially when the material to be translated has been supplied with an analysis of the propositional structure of the message in its original language.
APPENDIX 1

SAMPLE TEXTS

The texts cited are analyzed to reveal the structure at grammatical levels beyond the sentence, and also the sememic function of SPEECH tagmemes in the dialogue extract. The marginal numbers count sentences serially through each sample, and represent embedding of paragraphs within paragraphs by a decimal notation. When an embedded paragraph ends the number of the continuing embedding paragraph is repeated in the margin. Free translation is given at the boundary of each paragraph, whether embedded or not. The abbreviations used as morpheme glosses and in labelling constituents are included in the list on page 1.

1. How We Observe Dasain

PROCEDURAL DISCOURSE (= TITLE, PROC₁-8, FINIS)

PS

1 1 TITLE:SimS dasaq qli tamy-maʃ-la, nxepa-li-la,
    Dasain we Gurung-PL-TO Nepali-TO
dasaq ... asodâ mxalna-r pardi-m.
    Dasain  Asod month-in fall-NP

    Dasain, for us Gurungs, and Nepalis, falls in
    the month of Asod.

2  PROC₁:PROC PARA (= STEPₙ)

2  STEPₙ:SeqS da-i birʃ paila, dasaq bxandâ asʃ,
    then-CJ first Dasain than before
  aysi  dina-ri, jamra-  the-m, jxagû jamra-
    new_moon day-on put-NP barley seedling
    the-my.
    put-NP

    Then, first, before Dasain, on the day of the
    new moon, (we) set seedlings, (we) set barley
    seedlings.
Appendix 1

PROC 2:PROC PARA (= STEP 1, STEP n)
3 STEP 1: Sims jxa'le, phulpadi dina-ri, phulpadi
then Phulpadi day-on flower_leaves

4 tê-my, kwì-ri. STEP : SeqS phulpadi
show-NO temple-in flower_leaves

Then, on Phulpadi, (we) display flowers and leaves, in the temple. After displaying the flowers and leaves (we) kill a kid.

PROC 3:PROC PARA (= STEP 1, STEP n)
5 STEP 1: Sims jxa'le, astam dina-ri, ng's-thë-maq
then Astami day-on village-dwell-PL

6 jamman, múgi sae-mq. STEP : Purps se lxe lxe
all buffalo kill-NO n meat much much
ki-\{ birf, dasaq mxq'\'i-bae lxa'gi-ri, se lxe
get-CJ Dasain observe-AJ purpose-in meat much
lxe ki-mq.
much get-NO

Then, on Astami (= eighth day), all the villagers kill buffalo. After getting lots of meat ... to observe Dasain (we) get lots of meat.

PROC 4 : EXPL PARA (= TEXT, EXPo 1-3)
7 TEXT: Sims jxa'le naum dina-ri, cå astam then Naumi day-on that Astami

8 ngs'ari-ri ka'la\'ra di la-m. EXPo 1: Sims kwì-ri
evening-on Kalradi do-NO temple-in

9 ra jxa'j sae-mq. EXPo 2: Paraphs ng's-thë-maq,
goat young kill-NO village-dwell-PL
tamq-maq, jamman, jxya'uré sé-mu, mxwis-tiro Gurung-PL all folkdance dance-NO night-through

10 sê-mu. EXPo 3: Enums se, på, ca-mq, thg-my.
dance-NO meat wine eat-NO drink-NO

Then on Naumi (= ninth day), ... in the evening of that Astami day (we) do the Kalradi ceremony. In the temple (they) kill a kid. The villagers, the Gurungs, all dance folkdances, dancing throughout the night. (They) eat and drink meat and wine.
Appendix 1

6.1

PARENS_2:PROC PARA (= PRELIM, STEP_1-2, STEP_n, TERM)

13 PRELIM:Sims kwi-ri, puja, bomwe-d la-m.

temple-in offering Brahmin-ER do-NP

14 STEP_1:Sims paila, kubinda: tho-m.

first melon out-NP

15 STEP_2:Sims jxa-l6, ra jxa:j tho-m.

then goat young out-NP

16 STEP_n:Sims jxa-l6, mu: raga: tho-m.

then buffalo bull out-NP

17 TERM:Sims jxa-l6, ca kh:-mu.

then that finish-NP

In the temple, the offering is performed by the Brahmins. First (they) cut a melon. Then (they) behead a kid goat. Then (they) behead a bull buffalo. Then that is finished.

6 18 STEP_n:Sims jxa-l6 ca-r-bae nyxo-bae mx-xau

then that-at-AJ watch-AJ person-PL

jaman sa-sa-mae nga-sa-ra xyas-m.

all Sarki-of village-to go-NP

Then the people who are watching there all go to the village of the Sarkis (= leather worker caste).
Appendix 1

6.2 PARENS : EXPL PARA (= TEXT, EXPO)

19 TEXT: Sims sa·rgi-māe nā-sa-ri, tilś sae-mū. Sarki-of village-in pig kill-NP

20 EXPO: Seqs aba xrō dxī-rf pujā' la-f birf, now self house-in offering do-CJ

tilś sae-m.
pig kill-NP

In the Sarkis' village (people) kill pigs. Now (each one), having made an offering in his own house, kills a pig.

7 PROC: PROC PARA (= STEP 1-3, PARENS 3, STEP n)

21 STEP1: Seqs jxa·le tilś sae-b qxyo-l khā'-i birf, then pig kill-GE watch-IN finish-CJ
cā·r baje ṭalma-ri, xrōsa dxī-r kha-m.
four o'clock time-at self house-to come-NP

22 STEP2: Enums jxa·lē kaq, se, pā·, thq-my, ca-mū. then rice meat wine drink-NP eat-NP

23 STEP3: Sims jxa·lē, xra· küdi mxaे-bā-r xyā'-m.
then ferris swing play-GE-to go-NP

24 PARENS 3: Enums kwf xra· küdi mxaे-m, kwf la{ some ferris swing play-NP some long

25 küdi mxaे-m. STEP n: Sims jxa·lē cā mwxīs-tiro swing play-NP then that night-through
küdi mxaे-m.
swing play-NP

Then after the watching of the killing of the pigs is finished, at four o'clock, (we) come to (our) own houses. Then (we) eat and drink rice, meat, and wine. Then (we) go to play on the ferris wheel. Some play on the ferris wheel, some play on the long swing. Then all night long (we) play on the ferris wheels and swings.

8 PROC: EXPL PARA (= TEXT, EXPO)

26 TEXT: Sims pxanxqg-dū nxq·ga-ri, naū tomorrow-following morning-in nine
baje, sā·de naū baje, a·th baje jare, o'clock half nine o'clock eight o'clock about
The next day in the morning, at around nine o'clock, or half past nine, or eight o'clock, (we) apply the tika (= dot on forehead of religious significance).

(We) apply the tika (= dot on forehead of religious significance) around nine o'clock, or half past nine, or eight o'clock

EXPO:PROC PARA (= STEP₁, PARENS₁, STEPₙ, PARENSₙ)

PROC:EXPL PARA (= TEXT, EXPO)

FINIS:SIMS \( \text{jxa·le c\'o dina ser\'o dasaq k\'ha\'·m.} \)

Then from that day Dasain is finished.
2. On Consulting Astrologers

EXPLANATORY DISCOURSE (= POINT1-6)

1 POINT1: EXPL PARA (= TEXT, REASON, EXPO, TERM, FOOTNOTE)

1 TEXT: Sims tiyā ṇi hindū jati-la mxā·rsi
   today we Excl Hindu caste-To marsi
   mlxa-e nowe ca-bāe din mu-la.
   rice-of firstfruits eat-AJ day be-PLUP

2 REASON: Sims tara dinu dinu ka-ran tiyā.
   but stuttering . reason today
   chya·bāe joga athtabā din mu bi-i, jaisi-maṇ-di.
   good-AJ occasion or day be say-PA astrologer-PL-ER

Today was the day when we Hindu castes eat the
firstfruits of marsi rice. But, er, because (they)
said today was an auspicious occasion, that is to
say, day, the astrologers (did).

1.1 EXPO: HISTORY NARR DISC (= APERTURE, EP1-4)

1.11 APERTURE: NARR PARA (= BUₙ)

3 BUₙ: Sims jaisi-maṇ-di uyā·n din ṇxyo-na.
   astrologer-PL-ER previously day look-DI

Previously the astrologers had looked at the days.

1.12 EP1:NARR PARA (= BU₁, BUₙ)

4 BU₁: Sims jxa·lē uy, xya·bāe egxa·ra· gate,
   then before go-AJ eleven day
   a·ita·ba·ra, nesa-ri katwa·lē-lai 'nā·sa-r
   Sun-day evening-in crier-DAT village-to
   tha· pi-nē. mxā·jur xya·l birf gxaufd-d,
   knowledge give-go middle go-CJ cry-IM
   bi-i, cā jaisi negō nā·sa-r-bāe cil-maṇ-di,
   say-PA that astrologer and village-in-AJ chief-PL-ER

5 BUₙ: SeqParaphS jxa·lē katwa·lē nā·sa·ē mxā·jur
   then crier village-of middle
   kha·l birf gxaufd-i, 'pxan×a·ga ba·ra· gate
   come-CJ cry-PA tomorrow twelve day
   som·ba·ra mxā·rsi mlxa-e pulī kī-n. ṇi bi-i birf
   Mon-day marsi rice-of bunch get-IM RQ say-CJ
Then, before, last Sunday the eleventh, in the evening, (they) said to the crier, 'Go and give the word in the village. Go to the middle and cry (it).' the astrologers and village leaders (said). Then the crier came to the middle of the village and cried, (he) cried saying, 'Tomorrow, Monday the twelfth, get a bunch of marsi rice.'

Then in the morning of Monday the twelfth at eight o'clock the people of the households which planted marsi rice, from each household one person, went to their respective fields and plucked of their own field a head of marsi rice and a head of chrysanthemum. After getting (it) and coming to their own houses (they) tie onto the main pillar of their houses the head of marsi rice and the head of chrysanthemum.
Then, on Tuesday the thirteenth, (they) again let the crier cry out, the astrologers and leaders (did). The crier again came to the middle of the village and cried, saying 'Tomorrow, Wednesday the fourteenth, at nine o'clock in the morning (is) the eating of the firstfruits of marsi rice.

Then everybody, this morning at nine o'clock, ate the firstfruits.

The custom of us Gurungs is thus. And another
matter, if (you) plant marsei rice and ciniya rice on the fifth day of Asar the ciniya rice will ripen on the twenty-fifth of Asoj, (and) the marsei rice on about the twentyninth (or) thirtieth of Kartik.

POINT 2: EXPL PARA (= TEXT, EXPO 1-2)

13 TEXT: ConcS cha-ta-ma ḷeré ḷi tamy-maq-la thus-be-PR while we EXCL Gurung-PL-TO
la-ma-lé chyq.-bāe jog ḷxyo-m,
house make-PR-AV good-AJ occasion look-NP

14 EXPO 1: CondS 'din ḷhabā-t ḷxyo-m?' bi-du biyq..
day who-ER look-NP say-if

That being the case, also, for us Gurungs, when (we) are building a house (one) must look for an auspicious occasion. If (you) should ask, 'Who looks for the day?' the astrologers (do), In placing the foundation of the house (one) looks for an auspicious occasion.

POINT 3: CondConcs phēri a-ṛkō tā', khāi-bā mu biyq. again other word how-GE be if
pxrq la-ma-lé pxrq kū-ma-lé chyau pardi-lē kū-m.
shed make-PR-AV shed move-PR-AV thus fall-AV move-NP

Again another matter, however (things) may be, when building a shed, (or) moving a shed, (one) moves (it) under such obligations (i.e. of looking for an auspicious occasion).

POINT 4: ConcS phēri a-ṛkō tā', bya. la-ma-lé again other word wedding make-PR-AV
ya. chyq.-bāe din caidi-m.
also good-AJ day needed-NP

Again another matter, when (we) hold a wedding also, an auspicious day is needed.
Again another matter, when girls are first born, within three days (we) give (them) a little ragged dress. Then (they) wear that ragged dress continually. And (they) wear ragged dresses up to three (or) four years of age. (We) look for a day, with the astrologer. Then (we) give (the girls) a cape and skirt.

Then another matter, when soldiers are going
back for duty (lit. to be on parade) in India, again (they) look for a good day with the astrologer. Saying 'What day must (I) make my ) departure?', (they) ask (him). Then the astrologers answer, 'On a particular day, at such and such a time, (you) must go.'

3. Marriage Customs

PORTION OF A CONVERSATIONAL DISCOURSE (= TOPIC)

1

TOPIC: COMPOUND DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH (= EXCH1-3)

1.1

EXCH1: SIMPLE DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH (= SP-I, SP-R)

1 W: SP-I(QE): Conds camfri a•ma-d, 'ax-tå', ax-tå'!
   bi-du biyå. tó la-bå'.
   say-if what do-GE
   W: If the woman's mother says, 'No, no, it's not right,' what is done?

1.11 R: SP-R(ANS): EXPL PARA (= TEXT, EXPO, RESULT)

2,3 TEXT: Sims ax-tå'. EXPO: Paraphs ax-p{, ax-tå'.
   not-be not-give not-be

4 RESULT: Sims a•rgå kh•xyo-r xyå•-m, phëri xri-ba-ri,
   other place-to go-NP again ask-GE-to
   R: (It) doesn't happen. (They) don't give (the girl), (the wedding) doesn't happen. (The man) goes to another place, to ask again (for a bride).

1.2

EXCH2: SIMPLE DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH (= SP-I, SP-R)

5 W: SP-I(QE): Conds camfri a•ba. 'ta-m' bi-du biyå',
   woman gather OK-NP say-if
   a•ma. 'ax-tå' bi-du biyå. tó la-bå?.
   mother not-OK say-if what do-GE
   W: If the girl's father says 'O. K.' (but) the mother says 'No', what is done?
Appendix 1

1.21 R: SP-R(ANS):PROC PARA (= STEP₁, STEPₙ)

6 STEP₁:SeqS (with HORT PARA embedded in Object) liyd after
kʰe-maŋ, self-PL

O:HORT PARA (= EXHOR, REASON, REINF)

6.1,2 EXHOR:Sims 'cha· ax-bi-d-di! REASON:EnumS dx{ thus not-day-IM-EM
swa-ba· mu, a·myyŋ kolö swa-ba· mu. fine-GE be man child fine-GE be

6.3 REINF:Sims p|-l txu-m.

7 bi-i, khí pha-d bi-mu. STEPₙ:Sims jxa·lë mrí
say-CJ own husband-ER say-NP then wife
ne-m.
obey-NP

R: Later, among themselves, (her) husband says, 'Don't speak like that! The house is fine, the young man is fine. (We) must give (the girl).' Then the wife obeys.

1.3 EXCH₃:COMPLEX DIALOGUE PARA (= SP-I, SP-C, SP-R)

8 W: SP-I(QE):Sims camfri camfri tő bi-m?
woman woman what say-NP

W: The woman, what does the woman say?

1.31 SP-C(QE):SIMPLE DIALOGUE PARAGRAPH (= SP-I, SP-R)

9 R: SP-I(QE):Sims camfri-dí 'ax-tő' bi-b a·? woman-ER not-OK say-GE TN

10 W: SP-R(ANS):Sims q.
yes

R: The woman ... (if she) says 'No', you mean?
W: Yes.

11 R: SP-R(ANS):EnumS (with HORT PARA embedded in Object of each clause) kwí⁻la,
some-TO
In some cases the husband, if (he) says 'Don't say anything. You stay silent. (We) must give (our consent)', still gives (consent for the match).
APPENDIX 2

WORD LIST SOURCES

The lexicostatistical calculations underlying the classification presented in Section 1.2 were based on word lists with up to 103 items each which are on file, and available on request in mimeographed form, at the Summer Institute of Linguistics, Kathmandu. Some of the lists have been published in Hale & Pike (1970), and others in Hale (1973).

In the Rai Stock, the Sunwar list was taken in the village of Sabra (No. 2 East), and supplied by Misses Dora Bieri and Marlene Schulze. The Bainge, Umbule, Thulunge, Sotange, Khulunge, and Khalinge lists were supplied by Mr. Burkhard Schöttelndreyer, and the Bantawa list by Mr. Charles Hanneman. The Limbu lists were all supplied also by Mr. Hanneman.

The Newari list represents Kathmandu speech, and was supplied by Mr. Jagan Nath Maskey with Dr. Austin Hale.

The Raji list was taken by Mr. Johan G. Reinhard, working with Mr. Man Bahadur Raji, or Ban Gaun village, Sheri Panchayat, Banke District, Bheri Anchal. The Magar list was taken by Mr. Gary Shepherd in Yancok village of Tanhu District, and the Chepang list by Mr. Ross Caughley, working with Mr. Bhobikan Chepang, of Maiserang village in Makwanpur District. The three Kham lists were taken in the villages of Maikot, Taka-shera, and Babang by Mr. David Watters.

The Sherpa list was supplied by Messrs. Ang Gelbu Sherpa and Ang Dami Sherpa, brothers, of Kerung village in Solukhumbu District, with Mr. Kent Gordon. The Tibetan list was extracted by Dr. Austin Hale from Bell's English-Tibetan Colloquial Dictionary, 2nd ed. The Jirel list was taken near Jiri (East No. 2) by Miss Esther Strahm.

The Tichurong and Dolpa lists (labelled 'Tibetan' by the informants) were taken in the villages of Tarakot and Carkabhot respectively by Mr. David Watters in Dhaulagiri Anchal. The Kaike list was also taken in the same general
area by Mr. Watters, and the Ghale list by Mr. Larry Seaward in Barpak village (West No. 2?).

In the Gurung Family, the East Tamang list was taken by Mlle. Martine Mazodon in the village of Rishingo (East No. 1?), and the West Tamang list was supplied by Mr. Karna Bahadur Tamang of Sahugaon village, West No. 1, with Miss Doreen Taylor. The Thakali list represents the speech of people from the Thak Khola, and was taken in Kathmandu by Miss Maria Hari, and the Manang list was likewise taken by Mr. Charles Hanneman in Kathmandu, working with a speaker from the Manangbhot area. Gurung lists were supplied to me by Mr. Deu Bhadur Gurung of Ghacok village, Kaski District, Mr. Dan Prasad Gurung of Majkateri village, south of Pokhara, Mr. Thaman Singh Gurung of Mohoriya village (No. 4 West?), and Mr. Tek Bahadur Gurung of Bhumlichok village, near Lamjung.
INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

The list includes grammatical and sememic labels. The listing for each term is not necessarily exhaustive: a major reference, such as a defining formula for a construction, is shown in bold type; other references note, for example, occurrences of the construction as a filler in other formulae, and crossreferences between sememic and grammatical structure. Upper and lower case labels are used according to the conventions on page x, and labels for terminal classes are underlined.

adjective 36, 122-3
  - reduplicative 104-5
adjective root 122, 126
adverb - of degree 104, 126
  - of manner 104, 126
  - sentence 126, 130
adverbializer 126
afterthought 88-9
Agent 27, 68n, 71
ANSWER 52
ANTITHESIS 162
APERTURE 113, 173-4
apodosis 115, 146
argument 25, 31
aspect-mood 107, 110ff, 174-5
athabá 99
Auxiliary 101, 104
ax- 108
  __
  Axis 90, 127
  -ba 108
  __
Base 137
Benefactive 30
BUILDUP 52, 154, 157
case 26, 66-7, 71ff, 79-80, 90-1, 123
Cause - Efficient 44
  - Final 44
clause (level) 35, 60ff, 109, 129
Clause - dependent - see
  subordinate
  - Descriptive 71, 73
  - Ditransitive 71, 77
  - Existential 71, 76
  - Gerund 69, 109
  - independent 69, 99, 130, 135, 137
  - Intransitive 71, 72
  - Loc-Intransitive 71, 75
  - Loc-Transitive 71, 77
  - Relative 36, 69, 91
  - subordinate (= dependent) 69, 109, 137-8, 145ff
  - Transitive 71, 74
CLOSURE 173, 175, 183
collection 38
Complement 100, 104, 122
Concession 41ff
CONCLUSION 179
Condition 41ff
CONFLICT 54ff, 178
conjunction - sememic 38, 185
conjunction - grammatical 40, 41, 124, 138, 144-5
contrast - partitive 38-9
Count 105
cy 105
dative - see case
deictic pronoun 93
discourse (level) 40, 155, 173ff
DISCOURSE - CONVERSATIONAL 183-6
- DIALOGUE 183
- EXPLANATORY 179-81
- HORTATORY 40, 54, 177, 180, 181-3
- NARRATIVE 113-4, 162, 173-7, 178
- PROCEDURAL 178-9
disjuction 41, 97
emphatic 83, 85, 86ff, 125
EPISODE 173-5
ergative - see case
EVALUATION 52
EXCHANGE 169-72, 183
exclamation 129, 149, 162, 166
EXHORTATION 47, 166
Experiencer 28, 71
EXPOSITION 162, 173n
FABLE 173, 175-7
Factitive 31, 71
feminine 120
Final Comment 130, 151
FINIS 178
FOOTNOTE 157, 162
gerund 69, 107, 109, 116, 122
Goal 29, 71
hajjar 105
Head - (Adjunct Phrase) 104, 122
- (Noun Phrase) 48, 91ff, 95, 96, 98, 99, 120
- (Verb Phrase) 100
head - sememic 32
HISTORY 173-4
Hundred 105
implication 41ff
increment (level) 25, 31ff
Indirect Object 68, 71, 102
Infinitive 101
Instrument 27
intonation 131ff
introducer (= conjunction)
- intraparagraph 153, 162
- paragraph 41, 153
INTRODUCTION 179-81, 182
- le 126
LETTER 180-1
Link 95, 96, 98, 99, 124
locative - see case
Locative 68, 71, 81n
Manner 72n, 104, 126
Margin 138
MEDIATION 54ff, 178
modality 130ff
modifier - sememic 32
Appendix 3

Modifier - (Adjunct Phrase)
104, 126
- (Noun Phrase) 69, 91, 104, 122
Monologue 156, 169
mood 130ff
- declarative 110, 131ff
- imperative (= command)
  52n, 110, 131ff
- interrogative, non-
polar 52n, 110, 114, 131ff
- interrogative, polar
  52n, 110, 131ff
MORAL 176-7
negative 108
negò 95
nen 96
Neutral 29, 71
Noninstigative cause 28, 71
noun 91, 100-1, 120-2
- count 120
- locative 120
- personal 120
- proper 95, 98, 120, 150, 180
Noun Phrase - see Phrase,
Noun
noun root 120, 126
noun stem - derived
  personal 120
Number 91
number - sememic 36
numeral 36, 106, 123
- loan 91, 123
ŋxa - 103-4
Object 68, 71

OPENING 183
outcome 42ff, 146
paragraph (level) 41, 47, 111, 118, 152ff
PARAGRAPH - DIALOGUE 52, 153,
169, 176, 183
- DIAL, COMPLEX 170
- DIAL, COMPOUND 169, 172
- DIAL, SIMPLE 170
- EXPLANATORY 47, 153,
  157, 160, 162-6,
  173, 178, 179, 180
- EXPL, recapitulatory
  166-7
- HORTATORY 47, 153,
  166, 182
- NARRATIVE 52, 153,
  157-9, 162, 166,
  173, 176, 180
- PROCEDURAL 52, 153,
  160-1, 162, 178, 179
paraphrase 47ff
  - Amplification 49
  - Equivalence 48
  - Generic-Specific 48
  - Negated Antonym 49
PARENS 157-8, 160
participant - see role
Patient 28, 71
personalizer 120
phrase (level) 35, 39, 90ff
Phrase - Adjective 104
  - Adjunct 52, 91, 100, 104, 122
  - Adverb 104
  - Modifier 104ff
Appendix 3

Phrase - Noun, Alternative
39, 97, 106
  - Noun, Appositional
  48, 49, 90, 91, 95, 98f
  - Noun, Axis-relator
  90, 100, 104, 123, 127
  - Noun, Co-ordinate 39, 95f
  - Noun, Emphatic Co-ordinate 96
  - Noun, Explanatory
  91, 99
  - Noun, Modified 69, 90, 91ff, 95, 96, 98, 99, 100, 104, 120, 122
  - Number 91, 105, 123
  - Verb, Complement 100, 104, 122
  - Verb, Desiderative
  103
  - Verb, Infinitival 82, 101

plural 36, 91, 121-2
POINT 40, 54, 179, 182
possession 36
postposition 123
Predicate 25n, 68, 71, 100
predicate - sememic 25n, 37
predication 31ff, 37
PRELIMINARY 157, 158, 160, 162, 166
premiss 41ff
PROBLEM-SOLVING 54ff, 173, 178
PROCEDURE 178

pronoun 91, 95, 98, 118-9
PROPOSAL 52
proposition 25, 26, 33n
Purpose (clause level) 74
purpose - sememic 29, 44
pxrά 105
quality 36
QUESTION 52
question marker 132
Range 30, 71
REASON 47, 162, 166
REINFORCEMENT 47, 166
Relator 90, 123
REMARK 52
RESOLUTION 54ff, 178
response (level) 25, 52ff
response 129, 150, 182
RESPONSE 52
RESULT 47, 162
role (level) 25ff, 60, 70ff, 129n

sentence (level) 39, 47, 129ff
Sentence - Adversive 144
  - Alternation 98, 145
  - Alternation, Emphatic
  144
  - Antithetical 49, 142
  - Complex 137ff
  - Compound 137ff
  - Concession 41ff, 146, 160, 162, 179
  - Concurrent 146
  - Condition 41ff, 146, 160, 162, 179
  - Enumeration 143, 157, 160, 162, 166
  - Equivalence 143
Sentence - Immediate Sequent

- Inversion 49, 144
- Paraphrase 48, 142
- Purpose 146, 160
- Quotative 176, 177n
- Reason 144, 162
- Result 146, 160, 162, 179
- Sequence 148, 157, 160, 162
- Simple 137ff, 141, 157, 160, 162, 166, 178, 179, 180

SIGNATURE 180-1

SITUATION 54ff

source - see case

Source (clause level) 74

Source (role) 29, 78

Specifier 91

SPEECH - COUNTERING 53, 169ff

- INITIATING 53, 169ff
- RESOLVING 53, 169ff

staging 35, 78ff, 86n

statement (level) 25, 36ff, 129, 140-1, 185

STEP 52, 160

subordinator 107, 111, 145ff

SUMMARY 176-7

terminus 153, 157, 160, 162

text 47, 162

thousand 105

title 178

topic (Clause or Sentence) 68n, 83ff, 125, 150

topIC (conversation) 183

transition 180-1

y 98

Unit 105

verb 100, 107ff

- auxiliary 101-2
- essive 72n, 98, 100, 107
- infinitive 101-2

verb phrase - see phrase, verb

verb root 108, 126

verb stem - compound 108

- derived loan 108, 109

vocative 129, 150

word (level) 35, 107ff

TEMPORAL connection 50ff

- overlap 50
- succession 51, 54, 173

temporal 72n, 127

Ten 105

word (level) 35, 107ff
The following abbreviations are used:

AL  Anthropological Linguistics.
CUP  Cambridge University Press.
FoL  Foundations of Language.
GUM  Monograph Series on Languages and Linguistics. Washington, DC: Georgetown University School of Languages and Linguistics.
JASB  Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, Calcutta.
JTU SLN  Journal of the Tribhuvan University, Kirtipur, Nepal - Special Linguistic Number.
Lg.  Language.
MIT  Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
OL  Oceanic Linguistics.
SIL  The Summer Institute of Linguistics.

BAIN, Margaret. 1972. At the interface: Aboriginal and white contact in Australia. MA preliminary dissertation, Monash University.


BEAMES, John. 1868. Outlines of Indian philology, with a map showing the distribution of Indian languages. (2nd ed.) London: Trübner & Co.


Bibliography


ELSON, Benjamin F., and Velma PICKETT. 1962. An introduction to morphology and syntax. Santa Ana, Calif.: SIL.


------ 1971a. Indirect speech in Gurung. Kathmandu: SIL. (Mimeo, 3 pp.)


Bibliography


----- 1973. Semantic role structure. (Revised pre-publication draft of Grimes 1972b:ch.8.)


----- 1971a. The etics of sememic predicate function: a first approximation. (Unpublished.)


Bibliography


----- 1970. Notes on the interlocking of lexemic, grammatical, and phonological hierarchies from a tagmemic perspective. (Unpublished.)


Bibliography


